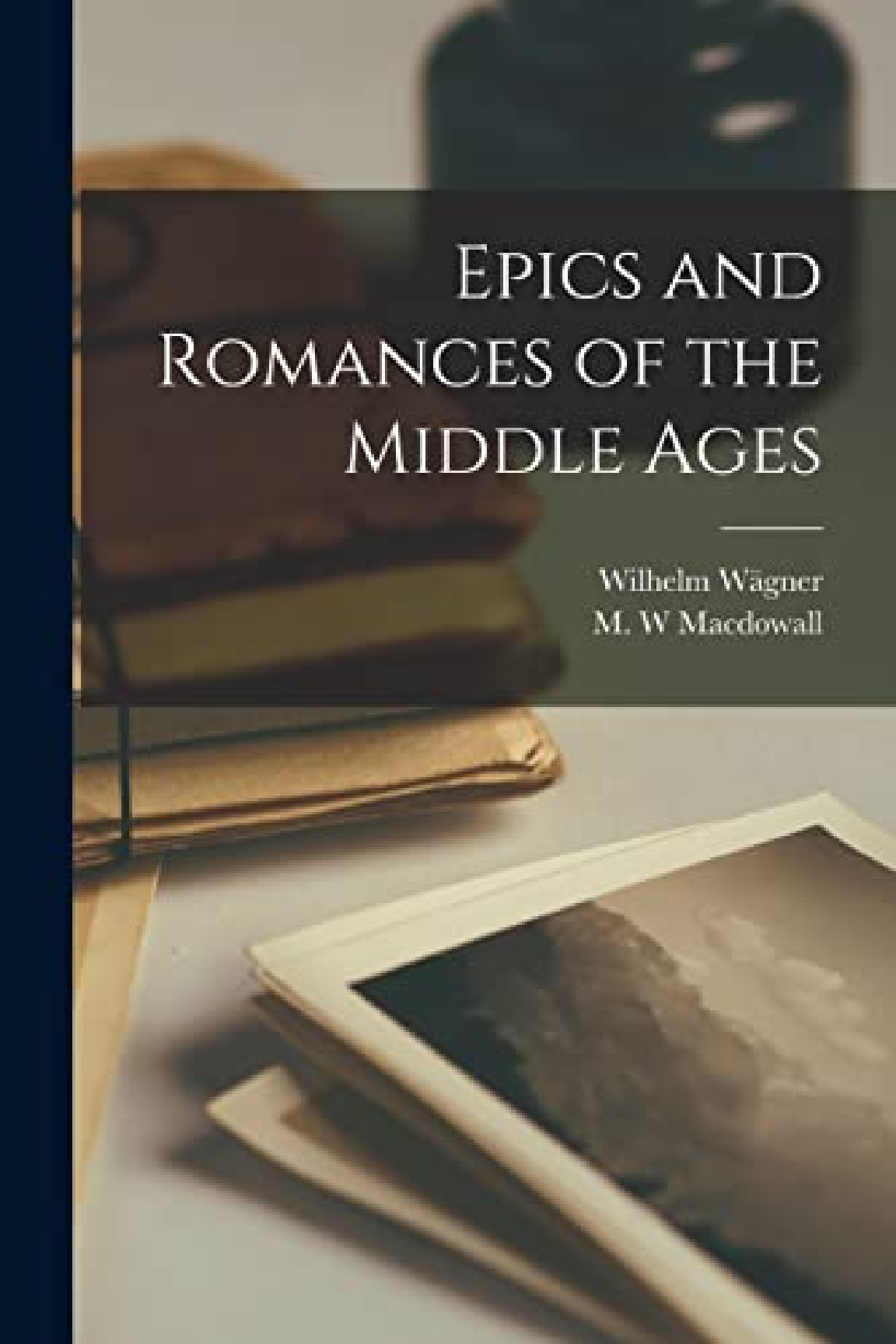

Epics and Romances of the Middle Ages
Wilhelm Wägner
M. W Macdowall

The Project Gutenberg eBook of Epics and Romances of the Middle Ages

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Epics and Romances of the Middle Ages

Author: Wilhelm Wägner

Editor: W. S. W. Anson

Translator: M. W. Macdowall

Release date: September 21, 2014 [eBook #46923]
Most recently updated: October 24, 2024

Language: English

Other information and formats: www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/46923

Credits: Produced by Chris Curnow, Sonya Schermann, and the Online

Distributed Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net (This file was produced from images generously made available by The Internet Archive)

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EPICS AND ROMANCES OF THE MIDDLE AGES ***

EPICS AND ROMANCES OF THE MIDDLE AGES.



FRONTISPIECE.

Epics and Romances
Of the Middle Ages.

ADAPTED FROM THE WORK OF
DR. W. WÄGNER
BY
M. W. MACDOWALL,

AND EDITED BY
W. S. W. ANSON,

Editor of Dr. Wägner's "Asgard and the Gods: the Tales and Traditions of our Northern Ancestors."

SECOND EDITION.
WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS.

LONDON:
W. SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO.
1884.

Butler & Tanner,
The Selwood Printing Works,

FROME, AND LONDON.



INTRODUCTION.

Legend is not history; but in legend we find embodied historical truths, manners and customs of past ages, beliefs and superstitions otherwise long forgotten, of which history itself takes no account. Legend has preserved for us, maybe in romantic dress, maybe under altered names and circumstances, stirring pictures of heroes and heroines, who once have lived and suffered, fought and conquered, or have faced death with trustful courage; pictures, too, of men of equal prowess, as strong in evil as in might, who, victorious for a time, have yet ever met a stronger power than theirs, stronger in virtue, stronger in might.

As we write, the shadowy forms of terrific Alboin raising aloft his goblet fashioned from royal skull; the noble Siegfried with his loved Chriemhild and the jealous Brunhild; brave King Dietrich; the gentle, patient Gudrun and her beauteous mother Hilde, all flit before the mind, framing themselves into a vivid picture, such as must have lived in the imagination of our early forefathers, stirring them on to noble actions, restraining them from evil working. Thus has good in all ages fought against ill, and all races of men have sung its victory in strains but slightly varying. And so will it ever fight, no matter how our more elaborate ideas of what is good or evil may

vary: the nation always glorifies the great and noble according to its own unreasoning reason.

This volume contains the principal hero-lays of the six great epic cycles of the Teutonic Middle Ages, and to them we have added the great mythical Carolingian cycle, which centred round the persons of Charlemagne and his heroes. The latter is mostly of Romance origin, and was composed by court troubadours for the delight of the royal palace, wherefore it never became the true inheritance of the masses. Beside these French poems, stand the Breton ones of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table, which later on took up the legend of the Holy Grail into their very heart, and at this period found their way to Germany, where they met with a more romantic and poetic treatment at the hands of the court minnesingers. But these foreign importations never found a true home amongst the German people; they never became *popular*. The native hero-lays on the other hand, even though less beautiful in conception and in form, lived on through centuries, and even to this day exist, though disguised and degraded. For in the market-places of Germany, and at the few old English fairs that yet remain, the pedlar bookseller gives in exchange for the farthing piece printed versions of many of these old legendary tales: Siegfried's battle with the Dragon, the Rose-garden, Alberic and Elbegast's adventures, and other wondrous histories of Teutonic epical origin. But this literature is fast dying out, if, indeed, it may not by this time be said to be already dead. In Iceland, however, and in the Faroe Isles, tradition still holds her throne unconquered. She yet sings to the listening greybeards, to the men and women, and to the growing youth, of Odin and his mighty rule, of Hönir and the wicked Loki, of Thor and Frey, and

Freya Queen of Heaven, of the Fenris-wolf and the Midgard-serpent. In the long winter nights she still tells of bold Sigurd's (Siegfried) deeds and battles, of Gudrun's faithful love and dumb grief beside the body of her lord, of Gunnar's marvellous harping in the garden of snakes, and the listeners hold it all in their memory, that they may sing and tell it to their children and their children's children. And so do they cherish the time-old legends of their fathers, that the ardent youth may still be heard to adjure his bride to love him "with the love of Gudrun," the master revile his dishonest workmen as "false as Regin" (the evil dwarf), and the old men to shake their heads and say of the daring lad, that he is "a true descendant of the Wolsings." At the dance, Sigurd-songs are yet sung, at Christmastide a grotesque Fafnir takes his part in the mummery. Thus old German tradition in her wane has found an asylum, perhaps a last resting-place, in the far North, driven from their first home by strangers, the myths of Greece and Rome. Every schoolboy can tell of Zeus and Hera, of Achilles and Odysseus, every schoolgirl of the golden apples of the Hesperides, of Helen, of Penelope; yet to how many of our older folks, even, are the grand forms of Siegfried, Chriemhild, and Brunhild more than mere names?

It is true that a tendency is now springing up in England and in Germany once more to enquire into these old tales, nay beliefs, of our common ancestry. It is true that we have a Morris and they a Wagner; but we should wish to see the people of both nations take a more general interest in a subject of such intrinsic worth to them, their long-forgotten heritage. It is not the history of class-books that they will find in it—it is that of their fathers' manners and customs, of their joys and sufferings, their games and

occupations, festivals and religious observances, battles, victories and defeats, their virtues and their crimes. Such is the golden field that lies beneath our feet, which, unheeded, we have let lie fallow, till it has almost faded from memory.

In a previous volume, *Asgard and the Gods, the Tales and Traditions of our Northern Ancestors*, we have endeavoured to give an account of the *religion* of our ancient Norse parents. In this volume we are occupied with their *legendary lore*.

To what extent these legends formed a part of their religion proper it is impossible for us now to say. Of later origin and more poetic treatment, they stood in a similar position toward the old Teutons as the later Greek heroic legend stood to the Greeks of history. Some say, and the learned Grimm amongst them,[1] that the heroes were historical men raised to the dignity of gods, others that they were humanized gods themselves; but may be neither theory is exactly true, though both contain a portion of the truth. In the hero-legends we certainly find heroes possessed of the distinctive attributes of certain gods, and we are tempted to add others to their characters, but we consider that these divine qualities were looked upon rather as divine *gifts* of the gods and did not thereby exactly deify the recipients. It was similar with the Greeks, and perhaps with all nations at a stage when their heroes really formed an essential element in their belief. The gods were never human heroes, the heroes never became gods, though each approached the other so nearly that we are often misled into assuming that they were identical.

W. S. W. ANSON.

[1] “Teutonic Mythology,” translated by J. S. Stallybrass. Vol. i. p. 315.





CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

THE AMELUNG AND KINDRED LEGENDS.

I. LANGOBARDIAN LEGENDS.

PAGE

1. ALBOIN AND ROSAMUND 19-27

2. KING ROTHER 28-54

3. ORTNIT 55-81

II. THE AMELUNGS.

1. HUGDIETERICH AND WOLFDIETERICH 82-114

2. KING SAMSON 115-124

3. Dietwart 125-130

III. DIETRICH OF BERN.

1. Dietrich and Hildebrand 130-151

2. Dietrich's Comrades 152-172

3. Dietrich's Adventures 173-190

4. Dietrich the Faithful Ally 191-198

5. Ermenrich—The Harlungs 199-208

6. King Etzel—Walter of Wasgenstein—Hildegunde 209-213

7. Etzel and Dietrich against the Reussen 214-215

8. The Battle of Ravenna 216-221

9. Going Home 222-226

PART SECOND.

THE NIBELUNG AND KINDRED LEGENDS.

I. THE NIBELUNG HERO.

1. Siegfried's Youth 229-237

2. Siegfried in Burgundy 238-242

3. The Dragonstone 243-252

4. The Wooing of Brunhild 253-260

5. Treason and Death 261-273

II. THE NIBELUNGS' WOE.

1. King Etzel's Wooing 274-278

2. The Burgundians Visit Hunland 279-299

3. The Nibelungs' Lament 300-306

III. THE HEGELING LEGEND.

1. Hagen 307-314

2. Hettel the Hegeling and his Heroes 315-320

3. Gudrun 321-330

4. Queen Gerlind 331-339

5. Battle and Victory 340-346

IV. BEOWULF.

1. Grendel 347-348

2. Beowulf, the Bold Diver 349-354

3. The She-wolf of the Sea 354-357

4. Beowulf is made King 357-359

5. The Fight with the Dragon 359-364

PART THIRD.

I. THE CAROLINGIAN LEGENDS.

1. The Children of Haymon 367-396

2. Roland 397-407

3. William of Orange 408-418

II. LEGENDS OF KING ARTHUR AND THE HOLY GRAIL.

1. Titurel 419-426

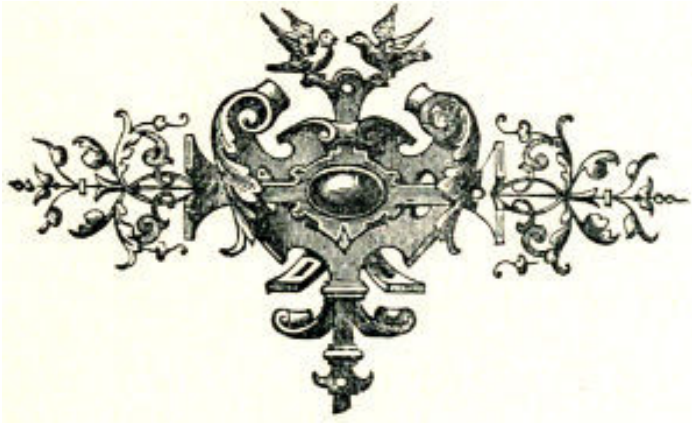
2. Percival 427-452

3. Lohengrin 453-462

4. Tristram and Isolde 463-474

III. TANNHÄUSER.

Legend of Tannhäuser 475-482



PART FIRST.

THE AMELUNG AND KINDRED LEGENDS.

I. LANGOBARDIAN LEGENDS.

II. THE AMELUNGS.

III. DIETRICH OF BERN.

ALBOIN INSULTED BY THE GEPIDÆ.

LANGOBARD

ALBOIN and

ALI

Unti

throws the glamour of his genius over the events he relate
strives to make them live in the hearts of his hearers.

The story of Alboin and Rosamund has a strictly historica with it. For instance, it is contrary to fact that the heroes of Alboin did not march into Italy at the head of his Langobard his Gothic empire was destroyed in 553. Nevertheless we gi between them is thus kept up.

The Germanic Gepidæ and Langobards and the Asiatic neighbouring provinces) at the time this story begins. War serfs tended the flocks and herds, and cultivated the land.

Now it happened that Alboin, son of the Langobardian rul Gepidæ, in fair fight. He then took possession of the armou hall, just as the warriors of his race were assembling there to forbade him, saying that it had always been held by the sa table of heroes until he had been given a suit of mail by som remembering in time that it was his father who stood befor set out with his train for the land of the Gepidæ. He arrived the princes of his people.

Alboin approached the king, and placing himself under p furnished with a suit of armour forthwith. The Gepidæ we received him kindly, and gave him a seat at his side.

Many beakers were drunk, and the conversation at table eldest son, was angry and jealous at a stranger being given Thurisind sent for the minstrels to come and enliven the com

They came. They sang the glorious deeds of their forefath power of the Huns. Lastly, they called upon the young m careless whether Fortune rewarded their efforts or not.

“Yes,” said Künemund when the song was ended, “Fortun creatures with white bands round their knees, that make th one knows it takes a deal of beating to make them go!”

The Langobards always wore the white bands alluded to them. Alboin’s blood was up in a moment. He started to h fought his brother, and there he would see how shrewdly the

A tumult immediately arose, which was with difficulty c had craved, and sent him away with his followers without

hospitality be broken.

As Alboin rode away he passed Rosamund, Künemund's maidens, and as he passed he looked at her long and earnest

ROSA

Peace lasted between the Langobards and Gepidæ while t a bloody feud broke out between the rival tribes. At length I of Alboin and his people. Upon which the Langobardian kin it for drinking solemn toasts at the great feasts. Then he murderer of her father. She had to feign love, though she hands. She bore her lot as well as might be, all the while father's death.

Alboin had no idea of the thoughts that filled his wife's h head of his own people, of those Gepidæ who had followed had joined his train. This he did in response to an invitatio who feeling himself slighted by the imperial court, had d destroyed every town and fortress that did not at once open During his three years' siege of that city, the Langobardian under his rule. One warrior alone was equal to him in prov the strength of twelve ordinary men. At last the gates of Pa to fire and sword, rode in under the archway. Just then his that he should die a violent death if he kept his word. The ki



ALBOIN FORCES ROSAMUND TO DRINK OUT OF HER FATHER'S SKULL.

The R

Alboin gave a great feast to his warriors, at which much
guests was of the great deeds of Wodan, the god of battles,
they spoke of their own conquest of the Gepidæ and their vi

In the midst of this, Alboin, intoxicated with wine and pri
should be brought, and turning to queen Rosamund desired
you not, Rosamund, that I love you more than aught in th
doing what I bid you." She looked at him in silent entreaty
strike her—and then—she lifted her murdered father's sku
flinging the goblet on the table so violently that the wine r
wife." Having uttered these words, she rose and left the roor

A hoarse murmur of indignation passed from mouth to m
suddenly sobered by his wife's words and action, got up and

Alboin did not see Rosamund again until the following d
seemed to be forgiven and forgotten. But Rosamund could
she persuaded Helmigis, the king's shield-bearer, to murder
to do the deed. So the queen turned to Peredeus for help, a
her side. One evening he slipt into the king's room and slev
of whom there were many, got possession of the royal t
Rosamund announced her betrothal to Helmigis, and named

The nobles assembled to debate this point, and, after r
murderer of the great Alboin was the last man who ought to
Hearing how matters were going on in the council, the consp

The Ret

Guarded by her faithful Gepidæ, Rosamund and her acco
carried away with them. There they placed themselves unde
emperor. They had not been there long when Longinus, hav
wealth of which she was possessed, asked Rosamund to r
viceroy freed her from Helmigis, to whom she was already
poison, telling her to give it to Helmigis the next time he c
goblet at a draught. The poison was so strong that he immed
to finish what he had left. Thus the murderers died, and the

the story tells us that wealth did not make him happy, and tl

We have still to learn what became of Peredeus, the gia murder of Alboin a mere nothing. Placing himself at the h offered his services to the emperor. His great strength gaine favour. As time went on he became discontented with the gratitude he deserved for his manifold services. Some of his make him powerless to hurt the throne. One night, when Pe of men crept into his room, chained him hand and foot, anc made all in the palace and neighbourhood tremble.

The blind giant showed himself quiet and obedient, so th his chains until one evening he begged to be allowed to w unabated. He was led into the great hall, and there, amid th had ever been. Suddenly he heard the emperor's voice, anc about his person into the hearts of two great officials of the and he had fallen under the spears of the body-guard.

So, one by one, the murderers of Alboin all came to a viol gain full possession of the fair southern land they had come

---

Occasionally their power was revived for a time by so following legend, till it was finally broken by Charlemagne t

KING ROTHER PUTS THE SHOES ON THE PRINCESS'S FEET

KING ROTHE

THE TWELVE

unimportant as it is now, was once a mighty sea-port. In th
while in the town itself were numerous palaces and houses s

Here it was that the great and glorious King Rother, th
amongst the dukes, counts and nobles of the land. The race-
wont to congregate, to throw the spear and practise such sp
and distributed prizes to the successful candidates for honou

One day King Rother was seated on his throne surrounded
and now the restless waves that were beating against the sl
old and faithful banner-bearer, Duke Berchther of Meran, w
raise their foam-crowned heads high in the air, dash forwar
of the earth resemble them in this, so indeed do all men."

“What do you say?” cried the duke. “Do you not hear how songs live on from generation to generation, and that your till the end of time?”

“That is poor comfort,” replied the king. “What is the fut home were better to me than the songs of which you speak helmets wreathed in token of victory. You live a second life good is my throne to me? I have not wife nor child. I sh children in my age!”

“Then why do you not marry?” asked the duke, laughing might pick and choose any one you liked for a wife, no o princess.”

“You say that I am free to choose,” said Rother bitterly; ‘ must marry in their own degree, or their children cannot su in many lands, but I have never yet seen the princess I could

“Nay then, sire, if you are so hard to please,” returned Be a lady who might suit you, if you are willing to risk your hea

The king desiring further information, Berchther showe daughter of the Emperor of Constantinople. Rother could no alone, must be his wife.

“Very good, my lord,” said Berchther; “but that is a more what I mean. The Emperor Constantine is so devoted to his c count, duke or king—is bold enough to go and ask for her h good of a headless wooer?”

“I think,” answered Rother, “that I shall meet with a bette to bear himself to the ruler of the West. But now call my cou

When the council was assembled, the king told his minist do his wooing in person. They strongly dissuaded him from had no right to endanger its safety by risking his head unne debate as to who should go to Constantinople lasted a long value to himself as the king’s could possibly be to the sta brothers, and declared in their name and his own that they journey; whereupon five noble counts, emulating the valou them.

Preparations were made for the departure of the twelve a
set sail. Just before the anchors were lifted, the king came
sang them a farewell song, so strangely sweet and stirring th
their fathers in the olden time. It seemed to them as thoug
The music ceased; and then Rother took leave of them, sayi
know that I am near and will help you."

The hawsers were unloosed and the ship set sail. After a
the Golden Horn, the port of Constantinople; and as the s
dressed themselves in velvet and heavy gold brocade, and
them as they passed up the street towards the palace. Non
they must be the ambassadors of some mighty prince.

The emperor was yet in bed, dreaming of the feasts and ca
him, and said, "Get up, Constantine; the messengers of a
importance. You must receive them with all due honour and

When the emperor was ready, he desired the ambassador
them courteously. At first all went well. Constantine was pl
ruler of the West, and expressed his delight in no scant term
also commissioned him to ask in his name for the hand of t
ordered his guards to seize the "foreign hounds" and cast the

When the guards had left the hall with the twelve ambass
and muttering, "Behead, drown, hang—which shall it be?
Twelve fine gentlemen in gorgeous raiment brought at once
may bring us glory!"

"Constantine," said the kindly empress, "beware what you
a good thing to give her to King Rother, and let her rule the
has sent, Rother will assuredly ally himself with the hea
destruction."

"St. Michael and his holy angels will protect us against t
sanctimoniously.

"Ah," said the prudent wife, "do not be too sure of that.
and salvation of the wild heathen tribes. Take my advice, a
be strengthened when their king comes over the western sea

The counsel pleased the emperor, and he gave orders that

THE SAILING O

The weeks and months rolled into a year, and still the a undefined dread. Had they perished at sea, or at the hands answer.

Old Berchther one day went to the king, and said, “Sire, goodly sons. Helfrich, the eldest, was slain fighting the ba Constantinople in your service, and have never returned. I w

“You must not go alone,” returned the king. “I will call a were best to be done.”

After a stormy discussion, in which weighty argumen determined to follow the advice of the eldest counsellors. T bad policy to send an army against Constantinople; for wer them to death when he found that Rother had appeared in to send a richly appointed embassage, composed of good me to save their friends, and gain the hand of the princess at the

King Rother announced his intention of placing himself at behind, Count Amelger of Tengeling was appointed regent.

Preparations for their departure went on apace. Noble services. Among those accepted were twelve men who wer horses strong enough to bear their weight. King Rother al trusted friends. They were Asprian (Osbern), chief of the No

At length all was ready, and the ship set sail amidst a blar with cloth of silver, and the vessels glided through the glass of his galley: when he touched his harp and sang of woman to deeds of daring. And the mermaids and dolphins dipt th listened to the lay.

Then Rother called his chiefs about him, and told them Constantinople. He would introduce himself to the emperor outlawed by his sovereign, and who now craved Constantin him by his assumed name, that they might make no mistake

The voyage was uneventful, and the adventurers soon reac



KING ROTHER'S VOYAGE.

The first to land were "Dietrich" and old Berchther, and
appeared, inspiring awe and fear in every heart. All were clo

The empress received the strangers with courtly grace, a
he said, "we should like to know from whence you come,
granting you permission to remain here, we would fain knov

"Mighty sovereign of Greece, Hungary and Bulgaria," a
where I bore the title and power of duke. I helped my liege
jealous of my good fortune, and I had to fly for my life. I ha

wealth I could carry, and now I entreat of you to grant me
in the field."

"You are an honest man," replied the emperor, "and you
had come on the same errand as the ambassadors of King R
master. I have them safe under lock and key, where even tl
the same as theirs, you and your men should have suffered t

On hearing these words the giant Asprian started forwa
lord," he cried, laying his hand upon his sword, "you mi
imagine. Before you took us prisoners many of your guard
have escaped scatheless? *We* are not lambs to be slaughtered

Constantine did not much like this address, and tried t
further conversation he invited the strangers to dine at h
emperor was very fond, began to steal the food from unde
tempting morsel being snatched away from him, and startin
with such force against the stone wall of the banqueting r
guards to turn the giant out of the hall, but the empress w
defied with impunity. King Rother must be very powerful t
his messengers free. Let them take our daughter home with
may induce her husband to be our friend and ally."

Constantine listened in angry silence. At length he desire
made up his mind on any subject, he never changed.

Dietrich and his friends took up their abode in the lodgin
treasures borne by the sailors: a labour that lasted man
acquaintances, amongst others, on Lord Helme and a brave
touched by their kindness that he swore to help his benefact

THE FA

The story of Dietrich's wealth and generosity became kno
curiosity to see the hero of so many tales. She took counsel
accomplish her purpose with most propriety. Then, acting o
allow her and her ladies to watch the sport. The emperor
spectators appeared on the course. The crush of people wh
of the court were able to get so much as a glimpse of him.

her five gold bracelets if she would contrive a secret meeti
best. She went to Dietrich's lodging, taking every precautio
refused to go and see the princess, lest the news of his havin
before dismissing Herlind, he gave her a golden and a silver
all.

"He is a noble man," said Oda, "and cares more for ou
remembrance of him, and will give you instead as many gol

Herlind was satisfied with the proposal and now tried to
both made for the same foot.

"Go," cried the princess, "he is not true. I will have none o
and throw them at his feet."

Wise Herlind understood how to interpret her mistress's
princess was angry with him, but that her curiosity to see hi
a proper pair of shoes with his own hand. Dietrich seized th
unobserved, and knocked at the door.

He stopped on the threshold in amazement at the wondro
also struck by his stately bearing and the resolute expressio
her displeasure, but she could not; she could only listen to
not at once obeying her commands. And when he asked pe
In course of conversation he mentioned Rother's offer for h
reason that had brought him to Constantinople. He asked
showed her that her father's sentiments being what they w
explained that before they could attempt to make their
emperor's dungeons, must be set at liberty. He begged Oda
pointed out the gloomy tower in which they were imprisone

Next day the princess appeared before her father, dressed
dream that night. Her room had seemed full of flames from
if King Rother's twelve messengers were not brought out of t
would fall under eternal condemnation.

"That was the devil's voice, not an angel's," answered C
rights I possess by the grace of God. But if it will make you
for a short time, on condition that some one will offer his l
escape."

Oda left her father's presence much comforted, for she hac

The Liberation c

When the emperor, his guests and courtiers were seated a
her ladies. She went round the table, and told all and sun
condition her father had made. "Now who" she asked, "will

A dead silence reigned in the hall. At last Dietrich rose in
for the men. Upon which the emperor ordered the twelve c
provided with clothes suitable to their rank and condition.
believe their senses, were seated at the meal provided for t
intently, a deep flush dyeing their sunken cheeks, and a
recognised the air. "It is he! Our king is near. He has con
passed, and light and food did their work in restoring the str

One day the door of their room opened, and Rother came
but he had scarcely had time to greet them when Berchther
hero of Tegeling, strong Asprian, and Widolt, his inseparable

Rother told Leupold, and the rest, about their voyage,
Dietrich. Then he told how he had won the love of fair Oda
his own life. But the best was yet to come. Imelot, king of D
army, and had demanded half the empire, and the hand of F
what to do," continued Rother, "I offered to help him if he v
so you are free to become my comrades in battle. Your armo

Widolt was so delighted at the thought of fighting that
knocked the emperor down by accident when he came in to

War ani

Of all who followed Constantine into the field on that oc
only because of the magnificence of their accoutrements,
brave Wolfrat of Tegeling in Bavaria, old Duke Berchther
West, and lastly huge Asprian and his giants. These consulte
and determined that when the Greek and Babylonian forces
and, if possible, into that of the enemy. At midnight they se

by means of the pass-word they had taken care to find out, but dark summer night; not a star was visible; the king's boc earth. Wolfrat stabbed them as they slept, to guard against in his arms as though he had been an infant, desired him to some servants who slept near, and they rushed into the tent was now astir, but the efforts of the soldiery were in vain. were killed, while the greater number fled, and sought refug



GIANT WIDOLT CARRIES OFF KING IMELOT.

Rother and his handful of followers had thus won a com with Imelot and some other princes of Desert-Babylon who night's work, they threw themselves on their couches, and sc

Not so the Emperor Constantine. Contrary to his usual hal horns to blow to rouse the camp. This done, he desired th present except Lord Dietrich and his companions.

"Ha! ha!" laughed the emperor scornfully, "so that fellow' and he trotted away to Dietrich's tent.

When he got there, he found that all was silent as the gra advanced to wake the sleepers. In the first tent, he saw the background a man was tossing about on a bed of straw, b sleeper. He stept over him carefully, and advanced close to t on the spot, shrieked out who he was, and offered the half c giant. He sprang to his feet, and seizing his club, shouted to very tents. He would certainly have killed both monarchs c hindered him. When Constantine heard the occurrences of t He gave a solemn feast in honour of the victory, which in companions in his pay at the time? In order that the empre happened, Constantine sent Dietrich and his men on in adva

Bringing Hc

The Western heroes rode back to Constantinople light-he their return home was near. The first step, in his opinion, v Greek army, and was rapidly marching on the capital.

"All is lost," they cried, when the citizens came out to m horde of savages will soon be upon you." Then galloping to his galley with her daughter and her ladies, and to bring any

They soon reached the strand. Oda crossed the plank lead Then the plank was withdrawn and the ship pushed from la but Dietrich explained to her the true state of the case, and with him to rule over the West as his beloved queen.

"Ah," said the mother, much comforted, "be kind to her, sometimes, as I shall think of you."

After a pleasant voyage the travellers arrived at Bari, whe with all pomp.

When Constantine returned with his victorious army to
angry. Had he not feared Rother and his gigantic allies, he w
whole city was in such confusion, that King Imelot had no
own land. The emperor did not fret much when he heard thi
He cared not for the rich dishes in which he used to deligh
appetite. He grew thin and pale, and his clothes hung loose

THE MOU

One day when he was alone in his room, a chamberlain
come, who would be sure to amuse his Majesty and turn
admitted. The emperor watched him perform all his curiou
who had been stolen from her home, and whose friends had
his whole soul in his eyes. When the song was finished, he
bring Oda home to Constantinople.

"Give me," answered the mountebank, "a goodly ship, w
back to you. You may send some of your soldiers with me
promise."

Before long the ship was laden and ready for sea. It was a
nothing of the soldiers the emperor had sent to see that the

All went well during the voyage, and the ship at last reac
to find out all that he could about the royal family. He f
leaving Leupold of Milan regent in his place. He congratu
thought his plan would be easier of accomplishment during
show off his conjuring tricks on board the vessel. Crowds
silks and precious stones and offered them for sale. Amor
wretched common pebble could do him.

"This stone," he said, taking it gently in his hand, "is
impotent man with it, he would at once become strong and

"Ah," sighed one of the lords, "if that were only true! I
children, all of whom have been lame from their birth."

"They would soon jump about and play like other childre
come on board my ship and try the virtue of the pebble."

The count hastened to Queen Oda and told her his story, a
cure the children if she could. She at once set out for the ve
landing plank was slipped, the hawsers were unloosed, and
of land.

ROTHER TO

The citizens of Bari clustered about the harbour not knowi
got ready immediately to pursue and overtake the robber's
proclaiming his return. As soon as the king was told what ha

"We must take an army to Constantinople," he cried. "My
by force and cunning I will win her back."

Old Duke Berchther shook his grey head, but said that he
other princes of the realm promised to do the same. Messen
and soon a great army was assembled. Rother picked out t
Asprian and his giants; the rest he sent home. Meantime th
and after a favourable voyage reached the neighbourhood of
run ashore in a small bay, surrounded on all sides by a thick
would serve to conceal both ships and men.

"We are safe here," said Rother to his nobles. "The pop
believe to be peopled by monsters of all sorts. Let the men
see what is going on."

There was a general outcry at the idea of the king adven
the princes offered to go with him. He, therefore, consen
starting Wolfrat gave him a tiny horn, telling him the sound

"As soon as we hear it," said Asprian, "we shall come to y

"Yes," laughed Widolt, "and then there will be many a bro

The three pilgrims set out on their way. After going so
shining armour. They asked him if there were good news in

"Not at all," he answered. "Look, King Rother gave me
pieces to boot, for I had lost both land and wealth at the ha
away his fair wife, and are about to marry her to that cruel
when Imelot escaped from here, he collected a great army,

prisoner, and now demands the half of his empire and the I present arrangement, is to remain here after his marriage, tl All the Christians in the place tremble to think of the persec I would join him with all my men as sure as my name is Arn

"Truly," said Rother as they parted, "a kind action often b

The city was full of life and feasting. Imelot, Constan banqueting room in the greatest peace and concord, for Con his daughter's marriage without losing her altogether. The h be father-in-law and close to sad Oda and her equally sorr might come in and watch the proceedings. So the three pilgr low over their brows. They heard Constantine, Imelot, anc hang King Rother and all his giants if they ventured to come by these speeches, Rother managed to slip a ring bearing h relief, showed it to her mother.

"Rother is here," cried the hunchbacked bridegroom su engraved on it. Seek him out and seize him."

Swords were drawn, tables overturned, and noisy shouts h and the former said clearly and distinctly—

"Yes, I am here. I have come to claim my wife, and if the I am ready to prove it on their bodies with my good sword."

Imelot laughed till the hall re-echoed. "Fight with *you*," hung."

"He must be hung!" repeated the courtiers.

"To the gallows with him, and his comrades too," contir blood starts from their fingers."

The heroes had only their pilgrim's staves, and these we swords and lances that were pointed at them. They were t many a hardy fellow in the crowd had cause to remember D

"A king," said Rother proudly, "who has often looked dea time comes. Let the executioner do his work in the haunted men put to a shameful death."

"A good idea," quoth the emperor grimly. "There are gal

his comrades on."

"That is right," laughed Imelot, "and then the monsters wl prank with their bones. If their friends the giants should cor them too, that they may find themselves in good company. upon his foes."

The preparations for the execution were finished in a fe amidst an immense crowd and the music of drums and trum

"And so it is Dietrich, kind Dietrich," sighed one; while ar is all the same whether a man is a king or a beggar when uncomfortable necktie for any man, but that it should be trie

The procession arrived at its destination. The prisoners we

"Be of good cheer, Sir King," said the executioner; "you gratitude I have provided a silken rope for you, that will do up with common hemp, I am sorry to say. By St. Michael, I r

"Pray loose my hands for a moment, good fellow," asked F

"A pious wish," replied the man. "I will also pray to my p the gallows-tree."

He loosed the king's hands as he spoke, and then began pilgrim's mantle, where it was concealed. Three times its w to the faithful friends who were waiting fully armed in tl commanded that the executioner should himself be hung if l and began to bind Rother's hands again; but at that moment

It was Arnold, who, with his men, had joined Rother's otl former benefactor. There was a fearful battle. Imelot and m during the flight. The whole army of Desert-Babylon was sca

After the victory King Rother asked for the emperor, but of valour," and had long before fled to the palace, where he all ebbed away, and he begged his wife and daughter to er veritable children of the evil one. The ladies were soon rea timid emperor in their midst, and accompanied by a numer the giants. Asprian's falcon-eyes at once spied out the emp arm over the empress, he seized him by the scruff of the ne

an end to him as he lay there senseless, but his master stopp

"Not so, Widolt; away with the miserable wretch to the ga

The giant caught the emperor up as easily as if he had b with him in his arms. But they soon came up with Rother not have done otherwise: his wife was once more in his arn When they all met in the banqueting room that evening, the varied emotions he had gone through, and it is said that quantity of wine.

King Rother left the whole of the Eastern empire, which then set sail for Bari accompanied by Queen Oda. Arrived solemnized with great pomp. Rother and his wife lived long pleasant things of their daughter Herka (or Herche, Helche),

ORTNIT AND ALBERICH.

I
OR

A g
powerful than any other monarch far or near. His name wa
from the Alps to the sea, and even included Sicily. The neigh
of twelve ordinary men, he was, of course, victorious in e
prevented him from enjoying his wealth and greatness. He c
was being said around him; deaf even to the minstrels, whe
up in the mountains, seeking adventures, slaying robbers, a
flocks and herds. But this did not satisfy him; he sighed for s

One day when he was standing, as he often did, on the s
light of the setting sun, a mist came up out of the water. A
wondrous sight. It was that of a castle with towers and bar
never seen before in all his travels. He could not take h
enchantment. Then the mist gradually closed again, and lady

While Ortnit was still staring at the place where he had s

thought, and turning quickly, clasped and kissed—bearded
his uncle. The new comer returned the embrace heartily, and

"You are a good lad to receive your mother's brother wi
been gazing at a bit of sorcery down there, and that accoun
royal head may soon be displayed from the towers of Munta
father."

"She is a real person then," cried Ortnit quickly. "She mus

"What is that you say?" answered Ylyas. "A king's head
minstrels to sing in Lombardy."

"How am I to find her?" asked the king. "Tell me the story

"Why, nephew," replied the elder man, "I have seen witl
now going to tell you. It is no minstrel's tale I am going to a
and he is ruler of Syria, Jerusalem, and other eastern lan
sepulchre, I arrived one evening at the gates of Castle M
compassion on me, took me in, and showed me no little kin
skin is as black as that of a Moor, and also the beautiful pri
daughter, when her sick mother was dead, and that was wh
the princess's hand in marriage. Seventy-two skulls already
you intend to offer your head to the Moorish king as the sev

"I have been through many a strange adventure before n
infidel."

On the following day the notables of the realm were sun
make a campaign in Syria, and desired their help in callin
from such a fantastic enterprise, all was at last settled as he
governors in whose hands the country was to be left during
point was Ylyas, who insisted on his right to go to Syria or
not to lose sight of his nephew.

As the council were separating, Zacharis appeared. He wa
of the king. When he heard what they had settled, he at
armament across the sea, for which offer the king thanked
the expedition until spring, when the weather would be mor

So the king had to smother his impatience as best he

sympathized with him. His mother, indeed, did her best to
plainly before him, and telling him how ridiculous it was to
a vision, and about whose character and disposition he kn
the life he was leading, and determined to ride up into the
his mother, she begged him not to go, for fear of some ac
dissuaded, she took a ring from her finger, saying, "If you
stone of little apparent value, but it possesses a magic powe
in the wild mountains, but first of all ride down the road to
under a wall of rock to the valley. Look about till you find
tree; there you will have a more wonderful experience than

Her voice trembled with nervous excitement, and her tear

DWARF ALBE

Ortnit rode away. He forbade any of his serving-men to
fresh air blowing about his temples cheered him, and chase
he entered the wood, where he had to dismount and lead hi
night was so dark that he lost his way, and did not succeed i
the open, he rested a short time to let his horse graze in th
again for the mountains, and at length reached the wall of r
she had told him, till he heard the gurgling of the spring,
immense tree, and early as it was in the year, it was alrea
around, that it was in a wide meadow, on which grass, clov
the number of birds that nested in the lime-tree was quite u
he must have heard those birds' song of welcome in his chil
to sing. He began to hum it softly.

It was a song about all the little birds, and the music each
of Alberich, king of the wood.

"Alberich—king of the wood," Ortnit was sure that he h
could not tell. Had he not played with a child of that name
past, he happened to glance at his mother's ring; the stone i
child, who lay asleep in the grass close by.

"Poor boy," said the royal hero, compassionately, "I won
mother must be about you! I cannot leave you here to die of

He had already fastened his horse to a branch, and stoopi
to his intense surprise he received such a blow on the chest
back. He had scarcely recovered his footing, when he four
strength not to be overthrown. It was a strange sight to s
together. Flowers and grass were trodden under foot, shrubs
opponent on the ground, and drew his sword to slay him. I
gazed at him so entreatingly, and begged in such a swe
defenceless, but would accept, in exchange for the life he
shield, and coat of mail of wrought gold and silver, and l
rendered strong and durable in dragon's blood. When Ortni
creature told him that hostages were impossible to find in t
for he also was a king, and ruled over a far wider domain
instead of upon it, and his subjects were employed day a
necessary, or indeed procurable, the hero allowed his priso
had promised, he said that he would like to have the ring O
it did not appear to be of great value.

"I cannot give it to you," replied Ortnit, "for it was a pr
parted with it."

"And you call yourself a hero," sneered the little creature,
when you are wounded in battle? Do you cry like a baby wh

"If you were to hew me in pieces," replied the Lombard, "
sigh from my mother."

"Well, good squire of dames," continued the other, "it can
it. I am in your power, am I not? Your sword is in your hand

After a little hesitation the king consented to let the boy d
he vanished from before his eyes, suddenly and without wa
a distance and now near, making sarcastic remarks on the
finally announcing that he would pelt him with a few pe
himself for some time against the terrible storm of sharp st
great strength nor his sword were of any avail, he turned to

On perceiving this the hobgoblin exclaimed: "Wait a bit, f
will give you. Listen to me. I have many important things
honour that you will not revenge yourself for the trick I play

"Very well," answered Ortnit, "I promise on my honour."

"And if I go on to talk ill of your mother?"

"No," cried the king, "I will never forgive that. You may
most perfect of women."

"I quite agree with you," said the little creature; "you ma
Alberich (Ælf-ric) king of the Dwarfs, and you and I are mo
first take back your ring. I trust to your word of honour."

The moment Ortnit felt the ring in his hand, he slipped
before him.

"You must know, great king," pursued Alberich, "that yo
and victories, and also for your marvellous strength. Your
elderly man, the youthful sister of the prince of the wild Re
prayed heaven for an heir. Your mother was the best and n
with fretting about what would become of the country and
that the nation would be split into factions, that civil war w
from Lombardy, a homeless exile. I often heard her plaints w
more her anxiety increased; then—well, you must know it so

"Monster, you lie!" shouted Ortnit, drawing a dagger fron
up at him so fearlessly.

"Your anger is bootless," he said. "You had better let me
small as I am, and big and strong as you are, I am yet you
divorce from his wife and let her marry me. He consented, l
weeping, and only gave way at last when her husband in
guessed what had happened, and when you were born you w
heart, however, until her first husband was dead. After that
among the flowers like two children, and I sang with the bi
your mother often sung to you again at Castle Garden. Whe
unseen, while the battle raged all round you, and on th
murderous weapon that threatened your life. When you cro
your wife, I will be there to help you. So long as you wear t
will see me. Now wait a few minutes; I am going to fetch t
which can cut through steel and iron, and even dragon's scal

Ortnit felt as though in a dream. While he was still think

and the clanking of armour startled him out of his reverie. T
dwarf was bringing his promised gift. On the top of the silv
whole suit of mail was of marvellously beautiful workman
sword was in a golden sheath, its handle was a shining car
the letters forming the king's name.

Ortnit was amazed at the beauty of all he saw. He put on
father up in his strong arms and kissed him on his rosy mou
the king rode away, the last words he heard were, "Do not
turn it on your finger, I will at once be with you."

When Ortnit got home, he was received with joy by all hi
signed to him to come to her. He instantly ran up the step
Alberich."

"You know?" she asked, hiding her face on his shoulder.

"I know," he answered, "that I love and honour my dear m

May came at last. The army assembled and marched sout
for Sicily, Messina being the place fixed on for the general
Zacharis ready with his ship, in which he had stowed a
merchandise, in case it should be wanted. Soon every m
experienced seamen steered the ship through the wild sea.

City of Su

After they had journeyed a long time, the welcome cry c
those on deck had a distinct view of the shore and the whar
and said:

"Sire, we are all lost. There is no wind to carry us past t
soon send out their pirate ships to chase us."

"Come, nephew," said Ylyas, "throw the cowardly dog o
swords enough to defend ourselves from the Moors?"

"Sir," replied the skipper, "the heathen will throw Greek
that. The ship will be burnt, and all the men either burnt the

No one knew what to advise, so all stood silent about the

"All arms below! Bring up the merchandise, and let the sa

"Hey-day! It is Alberich," said Ortnit; "how could I have fo

He looked up and saw the king of the dwarfs slipping rap
his side.

"You forgot both the ring and me," said Alberich, "but a f
my commands are carried out."

Much ashamed of himself, Ortnit gave the necessary orde
costly wares Zacharis had provided were spread temptingly
soon as he was aloft, shouted to the Moors:

"See here—we are peaceful merchants bringing wares fro

Ylyas stared up open-mouthed at the top of the mast. Th
What voice was that he had heard?

"Is the devil on board?" he asked, crossing himself, "or is
from the top-mast even now?"

"A good spirit," replied Ortnit, "a little dwarf who will, h
eyes."

With these words he slipped his magic ring on his uncle'
childish figure descending the mast, still more when Ortnit g

The Tyrian galleys had by this time come up with the sh
the city, inquired whether the object of the strangers in co
they were what they appeared to be, because of the numbe
enter the harbour, and even to land if they desired to do s
rich Italian stuffs at a very low price.

In the evening the two princes held counsel together as
onslaught should be made on the castle, and that everybody
could answer, Alberich broke into the conversation by sa
desired fame and glory would take his enemy unawares; but
them, he undertook to bear the message of defiance himself.

Alberich hastened to Muntabure by unfrequented roads. A
enjoying the cool evening air.

"Listen to me, Moorish king," cried the dwarf from the ca

desires that you will give him your daughter to be his wife
me declare war on you at once, and warn you that he will a
will come on to Muntabure, punish you for your evil deeds, a

"So, Goblin," cried Machorell angrily, "you want to arran
your master's adorning the battlements of my castle before l
I cannot see you."

"Down below you in the moat," was the answer.

The king flung a heavy stone down upon the place wher
out his guards and made them search the whole neighbourh

That evening Ortnit made an onslaught on the city, an
Tyrians soon got under arms and made a gallant defence; al
many of his faithful followers were slain.

When he returned from pursuing the Tyrians, Ortnit went
on the ground surrounded by his people. Was he dead or onl
helmet to see if he were yet alive. His heart had not quit
happened to touch him with Alberich's ring, and in a mome
never been wounded. It was well for Ortnit that it was so,
train-bands of the city, who had rallied once more. At length
really in his hands. Those of the citizens that were left sw
attend to the wants of the wounded, both friends and foes.
against Muntabure.

Castle M

After much consideration it was agreed between Ylyas an
bearer during the assault, and the dwarf at once consented
war-horse preceding them with the royal banner apparently
angel," they said in awe-struck tones. Nothing of importanc
the van.

At last Castle Muntabure loomed in sight: a grim fortress p

Machorell had heard of their approach, and was in readi
considerably, and was confident of victory. At first it seer
moment when the Saracens appeared to have success withi

walls unseen, and by a great exertion of his marvellous stre
walls into the moat below; while the men who had been wo
terror, when they saw the unwieldy machines disappear a
seized the right moment to push the advantage the dwarf h
than before.

SIDRAT THE

Alberich now left the walls, and opening a side-door i
battlements. This was the temple where the Moors kept thei
stone. The queen and her daughter, beautiful Sidrat, knel
Suddenly Sidrat felt her hand grasped gently by an invisible
took it as a sign that her prayers were heard. But the unsee
"Your gods are dust; I am a messenger from another world,
true God."

The girl started to her feet in terror, and hastened to her
dwarf flung the idols down and broke them in pieces, a
convinced that an evil spirit was at work within the temple.

Alberich went back to the princess, and drew her to the
make you his wife, and queen of his realm."

Involuntarily she looked down, and saw Ortnit fighting v
grace and noble bearing. She could not turn away her ey
exchanged one or two blows, the last of which split Machor
uttered a loud cry of agony, and he refrained, for at the sam
she was the maiden he had loved ever since he had seen her

"You see the royal hero?" asked the dwarf; but receivin
morning at day-break. Your father will allow you to do so, if
the castle. But when you reach the moat, you will find the ki

Knowing that his advice would be followed, he left the pri

The battle had ceased to rage as furiously as before, and a
river-side, where they were to encamp for the night, and the

All night long Ortnit dreamt of Sidrat, and then awoke an
the early morning, before the sun was up, the king mounte

himself beneath the spreading boughs of a tamarind-tree, a
would she not? At length a postern door opened, and a whit

"Sidrat," he cried, and clasped her in his arms.

"To horse, delay not a moment," whispered the dwarf; "gc

Ortnit at once obeyed, placed the maiden upon his horse
beyond arrow-shot, when a watchman on the tower recognis

Machorell and his men-at-arms hurried down to the fight.
at length the battle was over, the besiegers were too much
while the besieged were also in woeful plight, and their sorr

Ortnit began his retreat next morning. He found on his ar
So he gave orders for a speedy departure, and soon the gal
and much spoil. The Moorish girl proved a willing pupil wh
so she was baptized, and received the name of Liebgart. Sc
and the whole country rejoiced in the king's good fortune.

THE TOA

Ortnit and his wife were very happy together, and smilin
hero of so glorious a campaign, and even the imperial crown

One day when Ortnit and his queen were seated in the ba
was announced, who said that he had come from the East,
few minutes' delay, the ambassador was admitted. He was
Welle. He announced that King Machorell had sent him to m
sake; that the king, in token of his reconciliation with his
Syria. Having thus spoken, Welle called his wife, Ruotze. S
than himself. She dragged four great coffers into the hall, t
king and queen and all the court. The first contained dresses
silver bracelets and ornaments of wonderful workmanship; t
instead of silver. The fourth case was opened by the man hi
of strange form and colour.

"These are the eggs of the Abrahamic magic toad," said t
you will find in each the wondrous toad-stone, that shines l
will defend your coasts against every invader if you onl

understand how to bring up the beast, and feed, and teach
and quiet place amongst the mountains where we can watc
the seas, make friends with you in person, and see the mirac

The queen's heart was filled with joy at these signs of
husband's neck, she entreated that the proffered friendship
but Zacharis, the faithful heathen, shook his head, and spok
The king gave orders that the giants should be well treated,
by the governor of the province in which the place most suit

High up in the mountains near Trient was a marshy bi
precipitous rock. Welle and his wife took up their abode th
Ruotze brooded over the eggs untiringly. Before very long
out. They were pretty creatures, dainty in all their moveme
The governor used sometimes to go and see them, and delig
they had enormous appetites, and the more they ate the fa
soon taller than their guardians when they raised themselve
tempered. The governor hesitated to supply their wants wh
wrath of the creatures at what they considered semi-starvat
took refuge in another cave. As soon as their guardians des
wander over the whole district, devouring men and cattle, a
homes and fled to the mountain fastnesses. All in vain: the li
into their clutches. The governor sent out large detachments
tell the tale of defeat and misery. And with every hearty m
despair, for it seemed as if the whole kingdom would be dev

Ortnit's Fight wi

One day the Emperor Ortnit went to his wife and asked h
fight a hard battle. She could hardly pronounce the words "v

"Well, Liebgart," he said, "you must know that the dragor
stones your father sent me. I am the guardian of my peopl
must now help them in my turn by going out against these m

The empress wept and told her fears, but her husband cor
Rosen, that could cut through steel and iron, and even drag
will come. If any one brings you back this ring that you once

your hand in marriage."

He then kissed her and tore himself away. She gazed aft sadly how many noble warriors had preceded him in his friends.

Ortnit at length reached the rock where he expected to fin his horn, and loosed the faithful dog that he had taken with in the rock opened, and the giant Welle came out, shouting the king cut his great club in two with one stroke of his swo sword six yards long, whirled it round his head, and struck the ground.

"Well hit, old moon-calf," cried Ruotze, putting her head and throw his body into the dragons' den."

At this moment the setter, which had disappeared in the what was the matter. Upon this, Ortnit started to his feet, an monster howled with pain, and defended himself resting ag leg. Hearing the noise, the giantess returned. Arming herse strength; but, blinded by passion, she miscalculated the di head that she split it open. Ortnit then slew the giantess, some of the provisions he had brought with him, and let h meadow. Rested and refreshed, he once more set out on charcoal-burners, and asked them where he should find the vain. Then they told him that the monsters had set out to tr stayed somewhere on the road hidden in a cave, while the another land.

Unheeding the warning he had just received, Ortnit rode short time; but as his food was nearly finished, and he wan again, and rode all night long. Next day he reached a mead dwarf looked very sad, and when Ortnit drew rein beside hi

"My dear son, you are going to your death. Return to Gar seeking. I cannot help you."

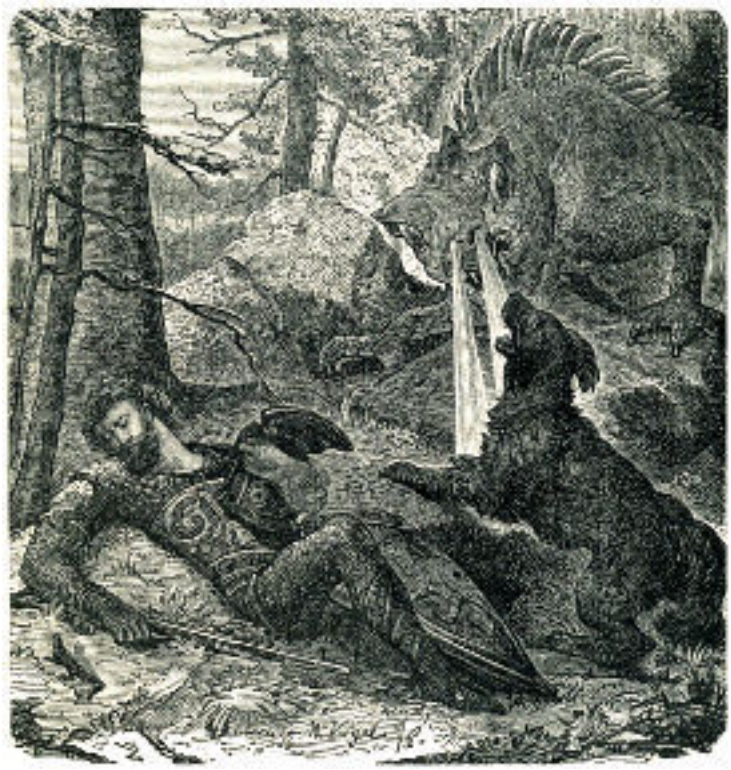
"I need no help," replied the hero. "Have I not the sword arrayed against my poor people."

"May you be successful!" said the little creature, and

successful! and to that end, watch and slumber not. Remem
the ring you got from your mother. You shall have it again i

Scarcely had Ortnit returned the ring when he felt a kiss u

The hero rode on unfalteringly over hill and dale, and th
very lime-tree under which he had had his first interview
peaceful and still. Both Ortnit and his horse were worn out,
full length on the soft grass, his faithful dog at his side. He
home to Garden and sweet Liebgart; but he put the desire
people are as one person, of which the people form the boc
high calling, must as far as in him lies protect his people fr
my sword and my good cause for victory." It seemed as th
were singing a pæan of joy and encouragement over him an
upper hand—his eyelids closed, and he fell asleep.



THE DRAGON FINDS ORTNIT ASLEEP.

All at once the birds ceased their song, the branches sto
heads as though a breath of poisoned air were passing over
with its weight, came the terrible lind-worm, its jaws wide
howl of mingled fear and anger, pulled at his master, hop
charmed sleep. The dog then sprang upon the dragon, but c
tail. At this moment the horrible creature caught sight of C
then broke all his bones by dashing him again and again up
remained whole as at the first. Then taking the dead body u
in the noisome cave, where its young ones fell ravenously u
get at through the steel rings of the coat of mail. The dog,
master, watched all night by the cave, but finding himself p

to Garden.

SIDRAT THE SORR

Meanwhile Liebgart and the old queen were very anxious. were sitting together, they heard something scratching at husband's companion on his last journey. Instead of showin down at the old queen's feet with a low, moaning whine.

"He is dead—murdered by the monsters," cried the unhap moment she sank back dead in her chair.

The shrieks of the young queen brought her women into t now no king in Lombardy, no one to keep order in the lanc country was split into factions. At last, tired of this state of a thing that could save the kingdom was for Liebgart to choos good ruler. They went to the queen, each hoping in his secr was required of her, she answered with solemn earnestness none was worthy to succeed him unless he could slay the other in a shamefaced manner, and hastened to leave the upper hand, and civil war seemed imminent. Liebgart, depr despoiled by the nobles,—was forced, in company with livelihood by spinning.

The Margrave of Tuscany was much distressed when he h her an asylum in his country; but she said that at Garden s sorrow for him. Touched by her faithfulness, the prince sent the necessaries of life. So she lived on, the Lombards tryin marriage; but in vain; she bore all the miseries of her lot wit her husband and of the avenger for whom she hoped.

This hope, which sometimes rose like a star on the clo fulfilled, but not for a long time.

HUGDIETERICH AND FAIR HILDBURG.

THE AM

HUGDIETERICH AN

HUGDIETERICH A

Emperor Anzius lived at Constantinople, and governed Greec
his son, Hugdieterich, to the care of his faithful friend, Berc
afterwards covered with honours.

Berchtung felt that his first duty was to choose a wife fc
beauty and wisdom would be a suitable helpmeet for so mi
the princesses he knew there was one and only one that he c
difficulties in the way. Berchtung confided his troubles to th
marriage between him and Hildburg, daughter of King Walg
Walgund loved the maiden so dearly that he had shut her up
the old watchman, himself, her mother, and her maid. This h

Hugdieterich listened to the strange story with great intere
he set to work to learn all that he might of women's works
women's garments. After which he announced his intention

He arrived in due course at Thessalonica, disguised as a gr
the new arrival, the king and queen invited the stranger to
that she was Hildgunde, sister of the emperor Hugdieterich
the king to protect her, and to provide her with a lodging in
costly piece of embroidery, as a sign of her good will. Her
ladies to embroider as she did herself. After this all went s
Constantinople, their protection being no longer needed.

Fair Hildburg heard what was going on, and begged her f
worked them. No sooner had she done so than she wishe
stranger a very suitable companion for his daughter, and H
weeks afterwards that she discovered who her teacher wa
before, until it grew into acknowledged love.

The fear lest their secret marriage should be discovered, o

"What will become of us?" cried Hildburg. "My father will

"Then, at least, we shall die together," replied Hugdieteric
attendants are on our side, and I expect Berchtung very soo
that my brother has forgiven me. I shall then send an ambas
knows our secret, he will not refuse his consent."

Berchtung came as Hugdieterich had expected, and fetch

convenient season, as war had broken out on the frontier Hildburg was in greater danger at home than her husband in tower, without any one except the three faithful friends who until months after this event that the queen, her mother, followed almost on the heels of the messenger. The porter pr the time he succeeded, the watchman had smuggled the chi evening, so the queen spent the night with her daughter. W to where he had hidden the child, and it was not to be foun and told her that he had taken the boy to a nurse, who had p

Soon after this, Berchtung arrived at Thessalonica to thar family had given the princess, his sister, and to ask for the h in love from his sister's description. The king put off giving a great hunt he intended to give in his honour on the followi

It was a lovely morning when the hunters set out for the length chance led the king and Berchtung past the tower husband who came not. As they rode along, they discover followed the spoor, which led them to a den in a thicket clos

In the centre of the nest, and surrounded by a litter of w was playing with the little wolves, pulling their ears, and cl translate. But evidently his companions did not like his att that it wanted very little more to make her spring upon the at the same moment, so that the danger was much increased skill as to kill both the old wolves on the spot. Then the king child.

"It's very strange," he said, "how much I feel drawn to th tower is close to here; we shall find some fresh milk there, children, and seldom gets a chance of seeing them."

They walked on slowly, Berchtung carrying the child, wh attention.

"Look here," he said, "is it not strange? The tracks lead st child from anywhere near this."

Fair Hildburg was not a little astonished when she heard recognised him by a birth-mark on his arm in the shape of a

calmly as she could to take care of the child, and only begge

When he got home, the king told the queen of his advent nurse, and accompanied her to the tower. Arrived there, th child.

“How I wish,” said the queen, taking it in her arms, “that

“Yes,” answered Hildburg; “but look at his clothes, how fi

“Oh dear,” sighed the queen, “what a lucky woman I shou

Hildburg could keep her secret no longer. She threw hers she was secretly married to Hugdieterich, and that the child and could not be undone. It was at least a comfort to thin daughter she would say nothing; but would think what was

Walgund felt strangely attracted by the child. He came t such occasions the queen would tell him how much she reminded him that they might in their old age fall a prey t some young, strong man to take their part, and added that queen prepared the way so well that when Berchtung mad hesitation gave his consent, on the sole condition that Hildl queen then told her lord the whole story.

“Wonderful!” he exclaimed, too much astonished to be an

Hugdieterich arrived soon afterwards, and was publicly m over, he set out for Constantinople, accompanied by his bea in remembrance of his first adventure.

With the empress went Sabene, one of the notables of Th and wished him to be his daughter’s counsellor in any m became necessary to her, and at the same time won the persuaded the emperor to make Sabene regent during their a

The high position he had gained through the duke’s k confident than ever. One day he went so far as to speak severely, and he fell at her feet, begging her pardon, and e promised, but commanded him never more to appear in her

When Hugdieterich returned victorious, Sabene was the f and at last remarked, as though by chance, that there was

Wolfdieterich, the heir-apparent, who rumour said was not
alraun, who had been palmed off upon the royal family by a
The only effect it had on him was to make him take his son
of faithful Berchtung, that he might learn all knightly exercis

Time passed on, and the empress presented her husband
also sent to Berchtung to be educated. The old duke loved al
for he showed himself full of every quality that makes a tru
time to go to Lilienporte, the castle of Meran, and Hildbu
grown accustomed to look upon Berchtung as his father
Waxmuth, had long since returned to Constantinople, wher
and confidence. Their mother was sorry to see it; and fearin
happened between them many years before. Hugdieterich's
from the country, and sought refuge amongst his kindred in

Hugdieterich, worn out by many anxieties and battles, g
arranged all his affairs with the utmost care. He bequeathe
empire, while the two younger sons were given kingdoms fa
the will carried out. But scarcely was the emperor laid in
demanded the recall of Sabene, because otherwise they fea
upon them. The empress did not feel herself strong enough
traitor.

WOLFDIETERICH

No sooner had Sabene returned than he began to scheme
origin of Wolfdieterich. He said that the empress had been s
and that it was elfish spells that had prevented the wolves
story the more easily from its utter incredibility, and demar
succeeded in making the royal brothers, Waxmuth and Bo
hungered. Sure of his own position, he acted with the utmo
her son at Meran. He only allowed her to take with her a m
possessed, whether through her father or her husband, had t
behalf, for Sabene had shown them that her treasures wou
Wolfdieterich and the Duke of Meran attacked them.

When Hildburg arrived at Hugelwarte, an outwork of Lili
Berchtung refused to admit her, because she had recalled Sa

unhappy woman, he led her into the castle, and treate
surrounded by seventeen young men, who all called her mo
the tallest and stateliest amongst them; but as soon as each l
tried to comfort her by promising to restore her to her forme

Duke Berchtung at first counselled peace, because the
unassailable; but at length, carried away by his foster-son
sixteen sons and their sixteen thousand followers at the dis
called together, that the duke and Wolfdieterich should set
their end by peaceful means.

The day after their arrival, they met Sabene and the kin
nobody seemed even to see his companion. When Wolfd
heritage, Bogen answered that a changeling had no right t
alraun, his father, for a kingdom in the realms of hell. Wo
words and looks of entreaty sufficed to calm him down and
did their utmost to persuade the duke to join their party, b
away, hiding his displeasure as best he could. He and Wo
without loss of time.

After a few days' rest they set out again for Constantino
Meran, they found the royal forces drawn up to meet them
surrounded on all sides by a forest. Next morning the troops

The battle-song was now raised, and echoed amongst the
Wolfdieterich was always to be seen in front. All at once he

"Do you see Sabene and my brothers on yonder hill? I w
men."

With these words, he set spurs to his horse and dashed th
to restrain him, now followed with his sons and a small body

As they neared the hill, they found themselves surrounde
Berchtung's sixteen sons fell at his side, while a stone struc
the ground. But the old duke and his other sons picked him
fled, and after resting only a few hours during the day, resu
that many of their men had got there before them.

"We will await the traitors here," said Berchtung. "They
worse than they came. We have supplies enough to last four

Soon after this, the enemy appeared before the fortress.
them, and threatened that if this were refused he would bu
besieged was a sortie, led by Wolfdieterich in person. He s
retreat, and with difficulty regained the fortress. From that
grave and silent; his trust in the sure success of a righteous
had fallen a victim to the resistless power that men call Fate

SIGE

The siege had already lasted three years, and yet there w
enemy chose to make famine their ally, the castle must
deliverance. One day Wolfdieterich came to him, and said
way through the enemy's camp, and go to Lombardy, there
The old man did his best to dissuade the lad, reminding h
enemy, already weakened by sickness, might raise the sie
midnight he took leave of his foster-father and his other faitl

"May God protect you, my dear lord," said Berchtung, cl
Roumelia, which are uninhabited, save by wild beasts and e
young warriors. Beware of her, for she is a witch, cunnin
emperor Ortnit, do not forget your trusty henchmen, me and

So they parted. They arranged that the besieged should m
off the enemy's attention to that quarter, while Wolfdieterich
the enemy's camp when he was recognised. Immediately m
their midst, and once in the dark forest beyond, he was saf
wood. He heard the were-wolves howling in the distance, bu
himself by the side of a broad moorland lake. All sorts of st
of them he killed, but he let the others escape. He wandered
himself to eat. He shared the bread he had in his wallet wit
was at last too exhausted to carry him farther, so he dismou

On the fourth evening, fatigue overpowered him so m
brushwood scattered about. The warmth did him good, for
quenched their thirst at a neighbouring rill, after which he
sad fate. Sleep was beginning to steal upon his senses,
Something black, and horrible to look upon, crept nearer ar
spoke to him, not with a human voice; the sound was more l

"How dare you rest here!" said the monster. "I am Rauc which, I have another and a wider realm. Get up, and go at

Wolfdieterich would willingly have obeyed, but he was to queen to give him something to eat, telling her that his cru was now starving in the desert.

"So you are Wolfdieterich," growled the bear-woman. "W count upon my aid."

Upon which she gave him a juicy root, and scarcely hac strength seemed tenfold what it had ever been before. It ev single-handed, and set his eleven faithful servants free. In ob to his horse, which first smelt it carefully, and then ate e ground, and neighed with eagerness to resume its journey.

"Speak, will you be my true love?" asked the bear-woman heart with her terrible claws.

"Keep back," he cried, drawing his sword. "Demon that helpmeet worthy of you."

"Have I not fed and succoured you?" asked Rauch-Else; come and free me from an evil spell. Love me, and save me.'

It seemed to the warrior as if her voice had all at once gro

"Yes, yes," he said, "if only you were not so rough and hai

He had hardly spoken, when the black fleece slowly slipp brow encircled by a diadem, and her green silken garment and thrilling as she repeated her former words.

"Speak, young hero, will you love me?"

His only answer was to clasp her in his arms and kiss her.

"You must know," she said, "that although Rauch-Else w queen of Old-Troja. Your 'yes' has set me free from the spe which you shall be king."

Full of joy and thankfulness, they started on their way, fo of waves breaking upon the shore, to which they soon after them. The prow was formed of a fish's head, large and point

the handle by which the rudder, or fish's tail, was worked. the advantage of which was, that they enabled it to go a desirable. The merman was so marvellously fashioned o wherever the travellers wished without their help. There we a ring with a stone ensuring victory to the wearer, a shirt of it would only fit a little child; but when Sigeminne put i exactly.

"Take great care of it," she said, "and wear it whenever and stone, from fire and dragon's tooth."

Wafted by the griffins' wings, the vessel clove the western Troja. There the people received their beloved queen with s the stately warrior Wolfdieterich as her future husband. Th joy began for the new king. By the side of his fair wife h Eleven Friends he had left in peril of their lives. Now and t gone would cross his mind like something he had dreamt, a but Sigeminne had only to take his hand, and he once more

Once when he, his wife, and the whole court were out neighbouring thicket. He did not seem to be afraid, but, afte

"Up, good folk," cried Sigeminne. "Whoever kills that st favour, and receive a ring from my own hand."

A number of huntsmen started in pursuit, first among t only to disappear at last. Wolfdieterich returned to the te confusion; for that terrible magician, Giant Drusian, followe absence of the king and his warriors, and had carried Wolfdieterich was now as much alone in the world, and as thought filled his mind—the thought of Sigeminne. He woul would die!

He exchanged his royal robes for a pilgrim's dress, and hi his journey. Thus accoutred, he wandered through many length he learnt from a tiny dwarf, that the man he sought dwarfs owned him for their lord. He set out again, and jour down to rest by a spring, and gazed longingly at the place fatigue was so great that he fell asleep, dreamt of her, and w

All at once he was wakened by a rough voice, and a blow

"What, ho! pilgrim," said the voice. "Have you snored lon wants to look at you."

Wolfdieterich sprang to his feet, and followed the giant w him to the castle. He knew that he had reached the end of hi joy.

There sat Sigeminne, her eyes red with weeping; and as sh himself together with a violent effort not to betray his identi

"There, wife," growled Drusian, "there's the priest you v What a mite he is, to be sure, and as dumb as a lizard int pilgrim, "sit down by the fire, and see if some of our good fo

The pilgrim did as he was desired, for, anxious and exc drink, and he ate till his hunger was satisfied. The giant qu of them, it must be confessed, far enough from the truth!

As twilight deepened, Drusian seized the lady by the hand of the alraun, who freed you from the bearskin, he will n broken skull too much. The term you asked for is over now,

He would have dragged Sigeminne from the room, but the sword from the hollow staff.

"Back, monster," he shouted, "that is my wife." With th attack made the latter jump back, exclaiming, "Why, alra everything fair and in order. You must arm and fight with m the wife of the conqueror."



WOLFDIETERICH FIGHTS WITH DRUSIAN FOR

The hero consented to fight the duel, and the dwarfs br
gold, the second of silver, and the third of iron, very heavy,
Drusian also put on his coat of mail, and caught up his battle

After some time, Wolfdieterich's shield was broken by a vi
avoiding the next blow, and grasping his sword with both h
down through neck and shoulder. Scarcely had the monster
small daggers and spears to avenge their master. The fine n
shirt protected the solitary warrior from every wound. At l
clasp each other's hands, and to assure one another of a love

"Let us away from this cursed house," cried the hero; "w
us."

They hastened out into the deserted court, and then sough
mounted, and rode away.

After a long and tiring journey, they reached Old-Troja,
greeted with joy.

Sigeminne ruled her people with a gentle hand, but justl
return, she was even sweeter and more thoughtful for othe
and what was worse, grew paler and thinner day by day.
together, she raised her sweet face to his and said, “When I
for then you will be looked upon as a stranger and usurper h

The thought of her death cut him to the heart, but he
redoubled his anxious care of her, but all in vain: her doom
and save his wife, but he was powerless to save her now. She

THE KN

Once, when he was standing sadly by her last resting-plac
to his own country when she was dead; and then the thoug
mind. He also recollected that he had never carried out his p

“I shall never forget you, dear wife,” he murmured, “but
once set out to bring freedom to those who have been true t

He turned away, and hastened to make ready for his journ

He passed through many lands, rich and poor. One evenir
whom it belonged.

“Sir,” replied the man, crossing himself, “ride on quickly,
king Beligan lives, with his daughter Marpilia, a maiden lea
sticks his head on a spike placed on the battlements for the
head be sent to fill it.”

The hero explained that he felt no fear of that, as his armo
pierce it. But the traveller assured him that the king so thor
escape from him alive.

Wolfdieterich and the man parted company. The former w
to meet him, and invited him to spend the night with him; a

daughter of his host, a young and beautiful girl, received h
together, Wolfdieterich, on being questioned, told them w
from his answers that he was a Christian. The heathen king
come just in time to provide a head to make up the require
was meant, but shewing no signs of fear, he raised his gobl
daughter.

Bedtime came, and Beligan, taking him aside, told him tha
that he might marry her if he liked, receiving both castle a
worship Mahmet. Wolfdieterich asked for time to think over

"You may have to-night to consider the plan; that is long e

He then offered him a goblet of wine, into which he had s

"Drink, friend," he said, "and you will sleep long and soun

The hero was on the point of obeying, when Marpilia, wh
and emptying it on the floor, exclaimed,—

"Not so, father. I intend to teach the stranger better things

She led her guest to his room, and said,—

"I have saved you from a great danger. My father was ab
room in the night and cut off your head, as he has alread
kingdom, if you will only pretend to follow our faith."

Wolfdieterich thought of Sigeminne, and turning to Mar
whole night talking on these subjects.

The next morning Beligan came, and invited his guest
throwing the dagger, explaining that such was their custo
where the king's servants stood round them in a wide circle
and received a buckler and three sharp and pointed daggers
The latter flung the first dagger at his opponent's foot, and h

"By the beard of the Prophet," cried the heathen, "wh
foretold that evil shall befall me?"

Wolfdieterich would not confess to his name, but stood re
carrying off a bit of the scalp; the third he caught on his buc

It was now the hero's turn to throw. His first dagger pinn

his side; but the third, which he flung with the cry, “I am W
all sides, but succeeded in putting his opponents to flight. H
out of the stable, and was about to mount, when he sudde
and a gale of wind was blowing the great waves so high tha
stood Marpilia, describing circles in the air and on the grou
Riding up to her, he caught her in his arms, and swung her b

“If I am to drown, witch, you shall not escape,” he said.

With these words he spurred his horse into the wild wav
until they seemed a sea. He looked around, and saw that on
horse; instantly the storm ceased, the waters retired, and he

But Marpilia was not drowned. She appeared before hi
embrace him, but he threatened her with his drawn sword
rock, and sought from thence to entangle him with new
thoroughly spent with fatigue, he exclaimed, “Help me, Thou

Scarcely had he uttered the words when the witch vanishe
him lay the broad road that led to Lombardy.

After meeting with many adventures by land and water, h
in with a giantess, an old friend of his father, who received
sad fate of Ortnit and Liebgart. Although her tale diminish
journey. The giantess said it would take an eternity travellin
horse and rider, and carried them pick-a-back on her broa
mountains, valleys and rivers, and set him down in the fair l

The Lin

It was a beautiful moonlight night when Wolfdieterich rea
of an olive-tree, he looked about him. He saw two women
When she threw back her veil, he nearly uttered a cry of ast
its dead, or had some deceitful elf taken the beloved form to

He stood breathless to listen, and heard Queen Liebgart,
sorrows and indignities she had been forced to endure.

“The cowardly vassals!” she said. “They have courage en
only thing that I desire on earth—to avenge the death of

promised, although unwillingly, to give my hand to the true

"There is only one man," said the maid, "who could do spread abroad in every land."

"The avenger is come, great queen," said the hero, steppir to conquer the dragon."

The two women started back in alarm.

"It is Wolfdieterich!" cried the maid. "He once saved me fi

"Thanks, noble hero," said Liebgart, "and may Heaven pr as it did my husband's. Nay, go your way in peace, and leav

But when the Greek showed her that his mind was firm, bring good luck to the wearer, wished him all success, and tl

Without more delay the hero turned his horse to the mou which at length he reached. He peeped into the dark cavern, were the young "worms"—the old one had gone out to seek it suddenly occurred to him that it would be better if the ol task to kill the little ones when the mother was dead. So re rode on slowly, he saw a beautiful child standing on a rock.

"You are come to revenge my son Ortnit; beware that yc and you will fall a prey to the dragon."

"My good friend," laughed the hero, "you are too young t be a sweeter morsel for the monster than I!"

And setting spurs to his horse, he rode away laughing. meadow, where clover grass and flowers grew in wonderful mid-day sun. The hero was tired after his long journey and his horse grazed in the meadow. Fatigue, the fresh sweet combined to make him drowsy, so he gradually fell asleep.

Perfect peace reigned in the quiet spot. It seemed as thc horrible hissing, a crashing of rocks and breaking of trees. T At the same moment Alberich exclaimed:

"Wake, noble hero; sleep no more; the lind-worm is upon

The dwarf repeated his warning several times in vain. The

he did not awake. It was not until the dragon gave utteran
the mountains tremble, that the hero was at last aroused fr
but his weapons were all too weak for the work they had
doing it any injury. So he flung the handle of his broken sw
he was defenceless. The worm caught him up in the coils o
great jaws. Then it bore its victims away to its den, and thre
again in search of more food. The little dragons tried to dev
his shirt of palm-silk, so they thrust him aside unconsciou
disposed of.

In the middle of the night Wolfdieterich came to hims
penetrated the cavern, and showed him at a little distar
cautiously for fear of waking the dragons, and found that th
sword-hilt. He at once knew that this must be the sword Ro
armour that he found lying uninjured amongst other coats o
armour he found a ring. This he put upon his finger. His pre
with it the old lind-worm. He at once attacked her, and, t
hard struggle. Thoroughly exhausted, he threw himself und
found him, and revived him with food and wine.

Before the victorious hero set out on his return to Garde
monsters; but when he had cut them off, he found that they
taking their tongues. These he put in a leather bag that on
began his journey, which was made longer and more wea
amongst the wild mountains, and did not reach his destinati

When he got to Garden, he found the castle full of feastin
lived near, and asked him the meaning of what was going o
lind-worm, and was to be married to beautiful Liebgart that
him priestly garments, and having received those that had f
he put them on over the armour he had found in the dragon'

He entered the great hall, and saw Burgrave Gerhart, nic
with her maidens, filled the glasses of the guests. Above t
victory. When the queen saw the pretended hermit, she tool
gave back, after having slipped into it the ring she had give
notice the ring till she had returned to her seat by Gerha
emotion, she desired the hermit to approach, and tell her fr

"Lady, you gave it me yourself," he said, throwing aside h

Every eye was fixed on him as he stood in the middle of like a god than a mortal man. When, advancing to the que and where he had found it, many voices cried, "Hail to the Hail to the new king of Lombardy!"

Burgrave Gerhart was not to be put aside so easily. He p Wolfdieterich produced the tongues from his wallet, there hero's pardon. This he received on condition of swearing fea

Wolfdieterich was now proclaimed king of Lombardy, and

"My lords," he said, "as ruler of this kingdom, I am also welfare. But as regards personal matters, such as the choice choose as she lists. She is yet mourning the loss of her fir thinks that my love and reverence will comfort her for his lo

Liebgart, remembering what Ortnit had said to her, placed

Wolfdieterich was no longer the impetuous boy who h prudence and forethought. He felt that his first duty was to was done would he be at liberty to consult his own wishes, spent in this labour, and then he told his wife that he must Ortnit, he should never return, but in the same breath confe journey and that of his army, which was to number sixty tho

THE F

Winds and waves were in their favour, and the army lan encamped in a wood, the king set out in peasant's clothes wandering about the city, and hearing nothing that was of former acquaintance of his. The man carried a basket filled him a loaf for Wolfdieterich's sake. The man looked at him k

"Ah, sire," he said, "things have gone badly here with u When the fortress capitulated, the noble duke Berchtung an dungeon. Death soon put an end to the old man's pain, but may bring them no better food than a daily supply of this bl

Wolfdieterich was miserable when he thought that he w

friend. He could do nothing for them now, but he might stil
He arranged with Ortwin that they should have better food
The old gaoler went on his way, and the king returned to his

He found his men already under arms, for they told him t
what had brought them.

The armies met, and the battle raged long and furiously,
the fortune of the day turned. The citizens of Constantino
down so long, hastened to the prison, and set Berchtung's te
under their command, and marched to the assistance of Wo
emperor on the battle-field.

Soon after their return to the capital, Sabene and the rc
sentenced to death, and was at once led away to instant exe
both people and army, and Wolfdieterich knew that they w
Berchtung, and had brought upon him all the troubles and d
best to be done, and reserved judgment until the following d

That night, as the victor slept the sleep of the just, his m
aspect. She said: "Spare my children, and my blessing shall r

And immediately Berchtung appeared at her side: "God h
blood."

As the hero gazed at the apparitions in intense amazemen
kingdom, glory, and me, through the ill deeds of thy brother

Morning broke—the figures vanished, leaving Wolfdieteri
and before them all pardoned Bogen and Waxmuth, restor
great fiefs under him. At first no one approved of his clemen

As soon as his arrangements were completed, Wolfdieteric
Liebgart with the greatest joy. After resting there for awhile
was crowned emperor. At the feast which followed the cor
be rulers of great fiefs. Herbrand, the eldest, received Gar
valiant deeds we shall hear later on, he was the ancestor of t
capital. His son Eckehart was the protector of the Harlungs,
trusty Eckehart. Berchther, the third son, succeeded his fath
famous as their brothers, so their names and possessions nee

Wolfdieterich and Liebgart had a son, whom they named
hero, and was the father of a valiant race.

SAMSON CARRIES OFF FAIR HILDESWID.

KING SAMSO

I
town and district of Salern, which was one of the largest fie
that peace and plenty cheered the hearts of all that dwelt in
the onslaught of the Vikings, who often descended on them i

Amongst the followers of the yarl was the warrior Samso
beard. He was always the first in battle, and had even beer
was terrible to look upon. His dark eyes flashed under h
witness to his remarkable strength. No one could withsta
unarmed, with as great ease as if they were made of touc
kindly, unless contradicted; then, indeed, he would keep
regardless of the cost to others. As can be readily imagined,

One day the yarl, who had just been made king, was sittin
round him sharing in his joy, Samson in their midst. Sudden
the king, and said, with all courtesy:

"Sire, many a victory have I helped to gain for you, and r
boon."

"Speak on, brave hero," answered the king, "and tell me
great deeds of valour. What you already have was given of r
deny you nothing."

"Good, my lord," said Samson. "I do not want any more
home, now that my mother has grown old and cross. Your
like to make her my wife. Now you know how you can pleas

Rodgeier was so astonished at this address that he nearly l

"You are a famous warrior," he said; "but the maiden is
her service as well as mine. So take this plate of sweetmea
here, and drown all memory of your strange request in a bo

Samson took up the sweetmeats silently, and bore them to
placed the dish before her, saying,—

"Eat, sweet one, for I bring you good news. You are to f
now, and bid one of your maidens come with you."

On seeing the girl's hesitation, he added,—

"If you do not go willingly, you will force me to kill the ya

He looked so fierce and grim as he spoke, that Hildeswid t

He took her by the hand and led her down to the court, w
light of day, and in the presence of many watchmen, none o
him on the saddle, and rode away with her into the wood a
was locked, and he knocked so thunderously that the sound
and again. A hoarse voice at last was heard from within, pro
of the house was from home.

"Mother," cried Samson, "pull back the bolts, for it is I—
and to tend you in your old age."

The door opened, creaking and groaning, as though unac
out on the threshold, dressed in rags.

"What?" she cried. "Do you bring guests with you? That w
could you do it, son? You know how poor we are;" and she l

"But, mother," said the warrior, "where is the gold I sent done with the gorgeous raiment I sent to clothe you?"

"I hid the gold away in my chest," answered the old wo pauper in one's old age. I dismissed the servants you gave house and home; and as for the clothes, I have laid them asi

"Ah well, mother," said Samson, "if that sort of thing mak open the door and let us in. We are tired after our long ride,

They went into the house and sat down. The old woman Samson would have made but a poor meal, had his groom n had taken care to provide himself before leaving the palac permission to go out and see if he could not find a stag to s was fortunate enough to find a cask of ale; and the old m alone with her maid.

The wide hall was dark and eerie, and full of strange flic the evening closed in, and the owls might be heard hooting sent her maid to ask the old woman to come back to the h terror was so great that she determined to go in search of he

She wandered through one empty, dreary, dusty room afte there she saw the old woman crouching over a great cl Approaching her, Hildeswid heard her gloating over her tre she added the princess's ornaments to the number, which co a low cry of terror, and the old woman looked round. The upon the unhappy child, and tried to throttle her; but at that

"Mother," he said, "you cannot remain here. I will take wood. There you can live in peace."

Meanwhile King Rodgeier had discovered that his daugh arms after another to fetch her home; but they all failed, and

Riding along towards Samson's grange, he and his men sa asked the old woman they met in the house to tell them whe man; but when the king offered her a handful of gold, she went a bit of the way to see that they made no mistake.

The king and his fifteen companions had not gone very f

black, like his beard and hair; his steed was also black, but
was a sharp, short fight in which Samson came off conquero

When the battle was over, he set out for his mother's hous
gold the king had given her.

"Mother," he said, "for the sake of that gold you betraye
my mother, I cannot punish your treachery."

The old woman went on counting her hoard as calmly as b

"Mother," he began again, "you betrayed your son for go
and I cannot slay you. Now listen to me: take your gold and

The old woman poured her treasures into a huge sack, and

"This should all have been yours, if you had not brought
the king."

"I have slain him and his men," said Samson quietly; b
muttered,—

"Very well then, I will go and seek an heir who will give b

Three times Samson's hand sought sword and dagger, but
forest to his home.

When he got there, he found Hildeswid hard at work with

"Wife," he said, going up to her, "my mother betrayed m
blood—but I would not, could not slay her. If *you* are false t

He looked terrible in his wrath, but she took off his helme
at once grew gentle, and told her that he wanted to win glo
acknowledged queen of her father's realm.

When the death of Rodgeier was made known in Salern b
Thing was summoned in order that a new ruler might be ch
late king, a man of great wisdom in counsel, and a lover of j
not been for Samson, who made raids into the land and carr
bravest warriors of his own and other lands, and made th
dead, or themselves die in the attempt. Then, led by the
through the dark forest, and all without finding the object o
being very tired, rested there for the night. After supper th

when they had carefully locked and bolted the great gates.

That night Samson came. Finding he could not break the pulled them down, and leaped into the place. The watch thatched roofs within the walls, all of which caught fire, the in upon them, and were filled with terror. The gigantic figu the flames, added to their fear, and all that were left of them

The king, followed by six faithful attendants, made his wa a goodly grange. He entered, and found that the mistress of she said he was out. He then begged her to leave her husba as quickly as he could, lest he should fall into his enemy's ha

Brunstein confessed that she was right, and took his depar seeing them, at once set out in pursuit. No courage or st Brunstein and five of his warriors fell never to rise again, v severe wounds. Samson started in pursuit. When he got out On their banner, a lion was displayed on a golden field.

"So, ho," cried the hero, "you are Amelungs. Welcome, Un

When they had rested and refreshed themselves in Sam nephew was outlawed and in need of help, he had come to much pleased, and announced his intention of taking the op and his companions set out next morning. No one ventured command that he was able to take up the powers and digr sent on messengers to desire the citizens to elect him king, their ears.

After much conferring together, the burghers came to the Samson had been their friend, their town had been more fl come and rule over them.

When the hero found that all was going as he wished, h where they were received with acclamation.

The new ruler governed with a strong hand, and adminis grateful remembrance of every kindness he had met with in the punctual fulfilment of these duties; and when he felt th appointed his eldest son to be his assistant and successor. H weak to be of use; and so when his second son asked him

him nothing, but called together the whole army and made t

He told them that when he was young every one had so long peace, that had brought material blessing on the realm, for fear this evil should increase, and the country become warrior to appear before him in three months' time, each ac his breast, for he was going to lead them against a powerful

The same day that Samson made this announcement to (Verona), a man of about his own age, and with an equal l Elsung should pay him tribute as his liege lord, and shou demanded as a right, due from a vassal to his king.

When the yarl read the letter, he was very angry, and ma of Samson's ambassadors to be hung on the spot, and the six

No sooner were the three months over than King Samson s

The armies met, and there was a great battle. The slaugh strength enabled him to slay the yarl, and gain the victory. prudent to choose Samson for their king, and thus put an en

When this business was settled, the victor sent for the ya the wife of his second son, to whom he was going to make could not marry so soon after her father's death; but Samso girl in mortal fear consented to wed the prince. His berserke his usual genial manner, kissed her, and assured her of his p

The marriage arranged, Samson set out on his return to gone very far, he felt his wounds painful. They would not h little town on the way, and there he died, naming his y residence.



DIETWART DEFENDS THE PRINCESS.

III. DIE

There was once an emperor of Rome (Romaburg) called Die
At last, wishing to marry, he sent an embassy to King Ladm
professed himself highly honoured that so great an emper
Dietwart would come to Westenmer and see the princess;

whether they were suited to each other. Dietwart conser
accompanied by a hundred of his bravest warriors.

Ladmer received his guest with all courtesy, and told him
the choice of a husband lay with the princess herself, for he

At the feast given in his honour, Dietwart dressed himself
to her father's guests, soon saw which was which, and fille
thought of the stranger, and she replied,—

"He seems to be a great prince, but I do not know his wa
not marry him, as I might be very unhappy far away from al

Her father kissed her, and told her she must do as she plea

A great hunt was arranged for the following day, the obje
had grown so numerous that they had done a great deal of n

Now it happened that Princess Minnie was a mighty hunt
also, for she loved the sport, and, as he knew, her arrow cou
much relish seeing her so employed. He thought it was no
seek a wife among the daughters of the great princes at hor
that might be, it was his duty, and theirs, as men, to see that

As they were going down a narrow glen, Minnie wounde
princess, drawing another arrow from her quiver, hastened a
rushed out of the thicket. The ladies of the court shrieked
Lady Minnie, come back!" and at the same moment, turnin
top of a neighbouring hill.

A frightful hissing, cracking and trampling was heard, and
to seize its prey. It was a sight to make the bravest man tre
straight at the monster; but they glanced harmless off its ho
and she fell to the ground. She seemed lost, for the dragon
were close at hand. The latter threw themselves on the wo
her. It was a horrible sight.

Lances, swords, arrows were no defence. They could not
was caught in its claws, or was torn by its terrible teeth, wh
to the assistance of his friends. He struck at the lind-worm's
the dragon tore his breast with its claws. It opened its great

thrust the shaft of his spear into its gigantic mouth, and wo
out at the other side. A stream of poison, and flames of fire i
the ground, the dying monster on the top of him.

Dietwart was roused from his insensibility by feeling hir
princess struggling to free him from the dragon's body. Son
his feet, he was so weak that he could not stand; and the m
to the palace. The wound on his chest was carefully bound u
been torn; but it festered badly, and the edges turned blac
some of the dragon's poisonous breath had touched it, and
whole country, mourned for the man who had rid them of th

One morning, as Dietwart lay sunk in a feverish doze afte
wound. Strange to say, the hand felt both softer and gentle
the princess. He watched her carefully remove the bandages
The pain at once left him. He would have thanked her, bu
bandages, and motioned to the nurses to be still, she went a
from pain as if an angel had brought him some of the w
returned, but the next morning Minnie came back, and p
again. He felt so much stronger, that he could not refrain fro
gently, and went away signing to him once more to hold his

The doctor rejoiced at the rapid recovery of his patient. W
received the miraculous balm from her mother on her deat
great necessity, and for those she loved.

"For those she loved?" repeated the hero; and he felt stran

When he was well again, he one day met her alone in th
long time; and when good King Ladmer heard of their eng
soon afterwards held, and there, in the middle of the table,
set in silver—a nice little tooth it was, weighing at least half

The husband and wife set out for Rome. The winds and w
land. The legend informs us that they lived very happily to
whom one son, Sigeher, alone survived them. But it does no
duties, or always remained fonder of field sports than of nee



DIETRICH

I. DIETRICH AN

Dietmar, second son of Hugdieterich, ruled with a strong
Ermenrich, or any other king as his suzerain. He was a mig
dared look him in the face. But at home he was gentle
according to another saga, daughter of a Danish king. His el
the lad had the strength of a mighty warrior. His fair hair
slender, yet strong and well-knit. He had regular features, b
earliest childhood any one might see that he would become
glowing fire when he was angry, and this the people thoug
ancestor.

When Dietrich was five years old, a famous hero came to
grandson of the faithful Berchtung. As we said before, Her
had brought up his son in the traditional way, so that he gr
was so pleased with his guest that he appointed him to be
friendship between master and pupil that lasted till death pa

The Sword

Now it came to pass that a giant and giantess invaded Die
were so strong that no one could resist them. The king went
He saw everywhere on his borders the desolation they had c
this ill-success young Dietrich and his master were as much
the giants till they found them, though the search should cos

They wandered over mountains and valleys seeking the n

hunt with their hawks and hounds, and came to a great for
thought they should find plenty of game. They uncoupled tl
of the meadow, holding their weapons in readiness. As D
crossed his path. Stooping from his horse, he caught up the
made so loud a moan, that Hildebrand heard him, and gallo
sight of the dwarf,—

"Hillo!" he cried. "Hold the rascal tight. He knows all roa
thieves, and is certain to be a friend of the robbers."

The dwarf shrieked louder than before, and declared that
hands of the giant Grim and his sister Hilde, that he had ev
and the strong helmet Hildegrim, and had been forced to
himself. He swore to help the warriors if they wished to figh

The mannikin was therefore set at liberty. He drew a long

"You could not catch me now, if I wished to escape you
power of the giants. Come back to this place at day-break
which you cannot conquer the monster. I shall steal it from l
show you his foot-marks in the dewy grass, that you may tra
wicked sister, you will find rich booty to reward you."

The dwarf had no sooner uttered these words than he va
companion came to the edge of the green meadow talking
goblin was not to be trusted, and that thievish Elbegast wo
was interrupted by a strange clanking sound, and at the san
They started to their feet, and looked about. Elbegast came
cry of joy, unsheathed it and swung it in the air.

"Now," cried Elbegast, "you have the strength of twelve r
and you will see the marks of his shoes distinctly printed
miserly, and said that leather was too dear. Follow the track
with you no farther."

He vanished, and the heroes followed the giant's tracks in

At length they reached a great cliff, but there was no ope
might be noticed here and there in the stone, so small that
man in armour, and still less a giant. Hildebrand thought
instead of a door. He tried to shake and loosen any projectin

vain. An enormous block of stone stirred and rocked beneat
thundering into the valley below. The sunlight penetrated
great fire was burning. Grim was lying on a bed of bear and
raised himself on his elbow, and perceiving the warriors' ap
up a burning log, and rushed upon Dietrich. His blows soun
the young warrior's nimbleness that saved his life, which w
smoke and the burning sparks that flew from the log. Hild
latter forbidden him. And indeed he soon had enough to
catching Hildebrand up in her arms, held him tight. It was a
in vain to free himself from the sinewy arms that held him.
and arms as though in a vice, and making the blood spirt fr
bind and hang him. Hildebrand called to his companion to h
over the giant's weapon with a despairing spring, and at the
head from the crown to the collar-bone. Then turning upon t

Hildebrand now staggered to his feet, and said that from
because that woman had been harder to deal with than any
treasure they found hidden away in a side cave, as their mee

King Dietmar rejoiced in the glory of his heroic son, whos
long after these events. He died loved and honoured by all.
Diether into Hildebrand's charge, begging his friend to teach

And Hildebrand did his best, with the help of his wife, th
Together they taught the boy to love what was good and tr
high deeds.

SIGI

Soon after Grim and Hilde had fallen under Dietrich's sw
Western Mountains, came down into the forest to visit his re
howled with rage and swore to avenge their death. A dwar
and aunt and the heroes, but Sigenot would not believe the
their sleep by Dietrich and his comrade for the sake of their

Years passed on. One evening the heroes were seated tog
talking.

"Master," said King Dietrich, "I never saw a living wife er

in the cave. I think the Lady Ute would be angry if she heard

"What a monster she was," answered Hildebrand with a sl

"Yes," said the king, laughing, "it showed my generosity. have remembered how many thrashings and floggings you h

"I am quite willing to do so," replied Hildebrand with a much on the past, for the giant Sigenot has long been wat avenge his uncle Grim's death. From what I hear, he is so str would fall before him like corn under the sickle."

"Hey! what new story is this?" cried the king. "So Grim's a me before? I will start to-morrow in search of him, and free

"What!" cried one of the guests.

"Are you going to attack the giant?" asked another.

"The murderous Sigenot!" added a third.

"Listen to me, Dietrich, my pupil," said Hildebrand solem impossible, and it is impossible to conquer that giant."

"Listen, dear master," answered Dietrich; "do you remem is apparently impossible, because he trusts in his strength, a the crown of victory or meets with death. My cause is just, power of the monster."

"Sire," cried Hildebrand, "you are no longer my pupil, bu the great battle."

The king answered after a short pause, "My master used t one is the way of cowards'—so I must go alone."

"If you do not return in eight days," returned the master, your companion in death."

"Why make so much ado?" cried Wolfhart; "the king will and if they both should fail, I will follow them, and I wager the castle here, and then hang him over the battlements, home."



DIETRICH CHASING THE ELK.

Dietrich then set out on his journey. On the evening of
cheery and so strong that he would not have feared to offe
grass, sunk in happy reverie, he saw a stately elk, sprang
drawing his sword he stabbed it in the neck, so that it fell
and ate it, washing it down with some cups of wine he drew

A cry of agony disturbed him in the midst of his enjoymer
foot with bristly hair, who was holding a dwarf firmly bou
warrior for help, affirming that the monster was about to ea
and offered him a fair exchange. He said he might have the
juicier mouthful.

"Get out of the way, you dog," bellowed the giant. "Get o
up, armour and all."

The hero's anger was stirred at this address, and he drev
from off his club as easily as a snowflake. Then the battle be
had to rest awhile. The king again offered to make peace
master and not with the servant. A shout of scornful laugh
mighty voice that made the trees tremble to their roots,
Sigenot? He would bind you to a stake as easily as I should t

And now the fray was renewed. The dwarf, who had fi
advised him what to do.

"Hit him over the ear with the hilt of your sword, the blad

Dietrich did as he was advised, and the monster fell with
into his skull; a second and a third blow put an end to him.

"Now quick, let us away," cried the dwarf, "before Sigeno
us here, we are lost."

Proud of his victory, Dietrich explained the object of his q

"Noble hero," said the mannikin, "you cannot escape you
be freed from an intolerable tyranny, in gratitude for which
father, Alberich, left the rule over thousands of our peop
Egerich, his younger son. But in spite of our caps of darkness
now in such vile bondage that many die of hardships, and m

"Well," said Dietrich, "show your gratitude by pointing ou

The dwarf showed the hero the snow-topped mountain w
and disappeared.

Dietrich set out, and about mid-day arrived at the regio
branches of the pines, and covered the stems to the root. A t
mist parted like a curtain, and Dietrich saw a beautiful wo
her head, and round her throat a necklace that shone like th
hero of Bern, or you are lost. The destroyer is lying in ambus

She glided past with inaudible steps, and vanished am
wondering whether it were the goddess Freya, or the elf-que

He was startled out of his reverie by a shout, and at the sa
him.

“So you have come at last,” he cried, “to give me an oppor

They began to fight without more ado. As Dietrich tried t
of his sword Nagelring was caught in an overhanging boug
broke, and at the same moment a blow of the giant’s club
unhurt, but the blow had been so heavy that it left him unco
body both with his hands and his knees, and then dragged h

Master Hildebrand waited for eight days with great impat
of his wife, and set forth in search of him.

In the wood near the snow-capped mountain Hildebrand
could no longer doubt what his friend’s fate had been. Veng
he rode on unheeding the warning that the little dwarf Wald

On perceiving the new comer the giant rushed upon hin
disdained no weapon of defence. He tore up bushes and eve
tried to defend himself by a ruse, the club came down upon
long beard,” shouted Sigenot, “Hilde and Grim are avenged a

So saying, he bound the fallen warrior hand and foot, an
bore him to his cave, singing loudly the while.

The giant’s dwelling was large and lofty. The roof was su
pleasant light over the foreground, while the back of the c
giant threw down his burden with such force that Hildebra
went to a side cave to fetch an iron chain with which to binc

When a weak man is in sore straits, he at once gives hims
he has tried every mode of rescue, however poor. It was thu
sword, which the giant had seized as rightful booty, lying in
gain the victory, if he could only cut the cords that boun
corners. He sawed the cords on his wrists against the pillar,
undid the ropes and cords about his feet, and snatching up h
protection, his shield having been left in the wood.

Sigenot returned with the chains, and looked about in astc
him behind a pillar, and the battle raged anew. The ground

the sound of blows. The combatants were now fighting in
retreat of Hildebrand, when suddenly the hero heard his n
voice, and the knowledge that his friend yet lived gave adde
stretched at his feet.

The victory was won. He cut off the monster's head, a
Dietrich's voice exclaiming:

"Hildebrand, dear master, help me out of the serpent's ho
and eaten many more."

Finding that the king was confined in a deep hole, Hildeb
him out. Whilst engaged in this search, he was joined by the
which the king was restored to the light of day.

"Hildebrand," said Dietrich, taking a long breath of the fre

After this, the heroes followed the dwarf into his subterra
and offered them costly treasures. The noblest gift that Dietı
newly adorned with gold and precious stones, so that it was

The heroes now returned to Bern, where they were receive

Queen

Once when Dietrich and Hildebrand were hunting in the
been able to forget Queen Virginal, who had come out to wa

"You would find it as easy to gain the love of a star a
mountains," said Hildebrand.

While the heroes were thus talking together, a tiny little m

"Noble warriors," he said, "you must know that I am Bibu
the dwarfs and giants in these mountains. With my help sh
wretch has now invaded her realm with the help of the mag
by his black art to pay him a shameful tribute. He obliges h
whom he then imprisons, fattens, and eats for his dinner. S
My lady, hearing that you conquered the dread Sigenot, entı
rescue our great queen."

The heroes consented, and asked to be shown the way

wondrous building shining on the heights in the light of the
them by exclaiming, “Truly if the lady Ute were not my wife
as things are, I will do my best to help you to win her. Well,

“The unconquerable protector of the queen has a wholes
the palace.”

“Night is the time for witches to journey, not honest m
moss, and rest until morning.”

The next morning was dull and misty, and a snow storn
mountain on foot, by a road impassable for horses. On an
thirst at a spring, they heard a woman’s voice shrieking for
terrible Ortgis, to whom she had been delivered according
dogs. At the same moment the holloa of the huntsman was
his followers had begun. Gigantic as were Ortgis and his t
alone escaped, but he was the worst of the whole crew, fo
father.

Dietrich and Hildebrand determined to take shelter in the
at the door several armed giants rushed out upon them, b
armour had kept behind the rest during the battle. He mu
voice, new giants arose out of the earth, to take the place of
continued to murmur, and horrible lind-worms crept out o
fight all night long. The black horseman disappeared at las
the valley. At the same moment the heroes saw an enormou
It wanted to creep away unnoticed, but the warriors imme
itself, hissing, upon Dietrich who stood nearest. With one c
the same time it caught up Hildebrand with its tail and flu
through its jaws, and so deep into a neighbouring tree, that
roaring like thunder.

The maiden they had saved from Ortgis had watched
Dietrich’s wounds, pouring in a healing balm. Meanwhile, H
recognised him as Ruotwin, the son of Helfrich of Tuscany, v

Ruotwin joined the other two, and promised to help the
person of Helfrich. The whole party now moved on towar
court was full of armed men, amongst whom was Janibas
magic words, and lions rushed out on the heroes. These

followed them. Janibas alone escaped.

Dietrich and his followers entered the castle, where they and set them free. After which, they burnt the magician's returned to that part of the country.

The whole party then started for Aron, the castle of He journey to the palace of Queen Virginal. A short respite fron very painful; but their hostess's good nursing had soon the l At last the day was fixed for their departure, and Helfrich h they were making their final arrangements, a dwarf gallopec the hall, his mantle torn and dusty, and his countenance as p

"Help, noble heroes, help!" he cried. "Janibas has come deliver all her maidens up to him, and also the carbuncle withstand him, for it would give him complete command ov worms that inhabit them. Woe to them, if they fall into his h

Dietrich at once declared his readiness to go alone to the instant.

"What, alone!" cried the dwarf. "If you go alone you are a my back, and fly before the foe; what then would become of

Nobody could help laughing at the mannikin's conceit; b arm and start for the palace.

The heroes and their friends had a long and hard pull up of which great crevasses yawned in unexpected places, but t a glimpse of Jeraspunt. At length they came so near that th minutes later the terrible scene was visible. Some of the pal themselves. Gigantic dogs, monsters of every sort, and hor forced their way through the broken gate, and were raging,

The sovereign lady sat there unmoved, surrounded by he graced her head, and a silver veil was wrapt about her. Her could not pass. Whether the magic lay in her wonderful b impossible to say. No one had yet dared to approach her. then recovering themselves, pressed forward.

They made their way in spite of clouds of snow, and lun

blew them away. The mountains trembled under repeated th
palace. But at the same moment Dietrich perceived the bla
sprang upon him, broke the tablet, and slew the magician. A
fell, ice fields broke up, and then came a silence as of death
to the palace was free. The magician's followers, eager to
their efforts were vain. The monsters, who yet lived, hac
mountains.



DIETRICH ESPIES QUEEN VIRGINAL.

Dietrich now approached the queen at the head of his foll

throne, and offering him her hand, greeted him with a kiss. seated himself at her side.

“Know, great hero,” she said, “that I have seen your lov home with you, and live amongst mortal men till death part

The palace was cleansed by invisible hands; the gate, a night, and the marriage of the mortal hero with the elf-qu started for Bern, where Virginal made his home so delight adventures. Meanwhile there was sorrow in the mountains, left her country and her people for the sake of a mortal. Al prismatic hues of former times, and the fairy palace was invi

WIELAND, THE SMITH, ARMING HIS SON WITTICH.

DIETRICH'S

HE

In all countries and amongst all nations were spread the nar
of many a wandering minstrel, and so it came to pass that
part in the amusements or serious occupations that engrosse

Even in the far north his name was famous, not only in tl
grange.

At the time of which we speak, a renowned horse-dealer c
for the singing and fiddling of the wandering minstrels, but
he could wield lance and sword as well as the hero of Bern
when the young fellow was boasting as usual that he was as
pet:

“Well, if that be the case, go up to the hollow mountai
neighbourhood.”

The lad looked up at him inquiringly. The father nodded
out.

“He will not do it,” muttered the old man, “but I think I ha

Things were going otherwise than honest Studas dreamed
one of his father’s best horses, rode off to the mountain. The
his spear into his mouth with such force that the point came
furiously with his tail, but at length fell dead. Whereupon
grange, and flung the trophy at his father’s feet.

“St. Kilian!” cried Studas. “Boy, have you really killed the

“Well,” answered the bold youth, “I shall now go and s
bravely to-day. He will take me to Bern, and bring me home

The old man felt his head go round when he heard his so
Heime rode out into the unknown world.

In the royal palace of Bern Queen Virginal was busy fillin
and who agreed that great as were the blessings of peace, i
their swords should rust in their scabbards. In the midst of
full armour. He was a tall broad-shouldered man, and appar

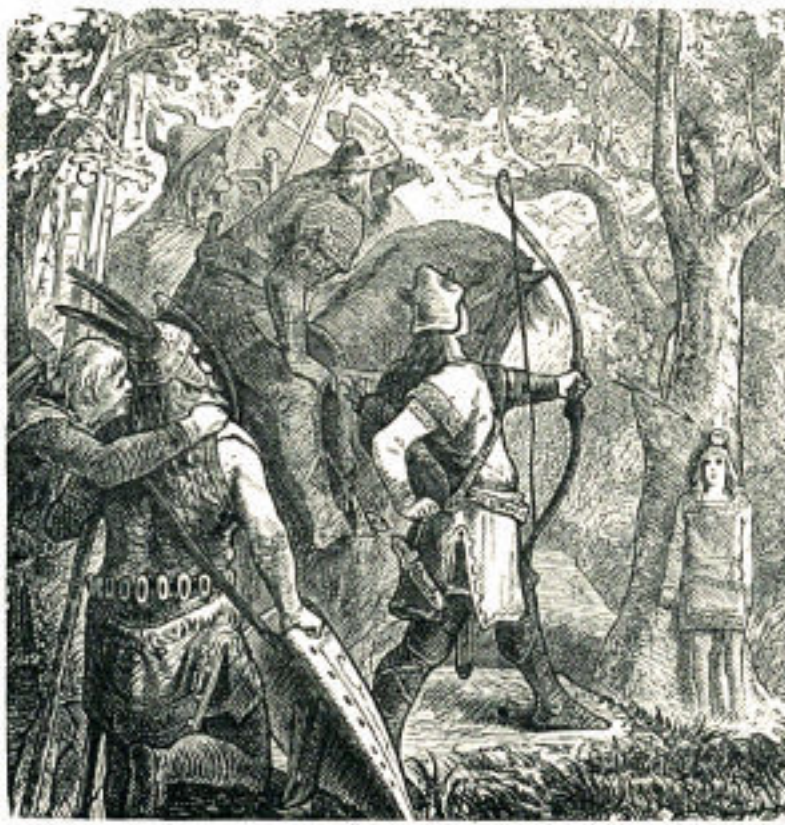
Hildebrand welcomed him, and invited him to take off
were more suited to a royal feast than the panoply of war.

“My trade is war,” said the stranger, “I am Heime, son
famous Dietrich to come out with me into the open field, an

He spoke so loud that every one heard, and Dietrich at on

and watch the fray. The king then put on his armour, moun
for the combat.

They fought for some time on horseback, but at length th
to the ground, and continued the combat on foot. Again a
valour, his sword broke, and he stood defenceless before
preparatory to giving his opponent the death-blow, but he h
courage of the bold warrior, who stood so fearless before hi
to Heime in sign of peace. This generosity conquered the la
himself overcome, and swore that henceforth he would be
was pleased to number a man like Heime among his followe



EIGEL SHOOTS THE APPLE OFF HIS SON'S H

WIT

Wittich was the son of Wieland, the smith of Heligoland, had taught him the use of the bow, and the greatest praise h

"You are a bowman like my brother Eigel."

Young Wittich wanted very much to learn all that he coul

"When your mother's father—Niduder, Drost of the Niars castle, and entered his service as bowman of the guard. Eve eagle that was flying high as the heavens. I have also seen hi the bough on which the creature sat. And he did other won see something more wonderful still, so he desired him to sh off, telling him at the same time that if he refused, or if o pieces before his eyes. Eigel drew three arrows from his quiv looking at his father with perfect confidence. Could you hav

"No father," answered Wittich boldly, "I would have fetch that wicked old man; and then, if his Niars had tried to aven

"All very fine, young hero," laughed the father, "but reme what he *would* have done under such and such circumsta something of that kind. After he had shot away the apple accident killed his son, he would have used the two other a no notice of the speech at the time, but soon afterwards, h knows what has become of him."

The smith brought up his son on tales like this, which na more and more unwilling to work at the forge. One day t armour, and the good sword Mimung, that he might hie av his ancestors. After many refusals the smith at last gave his enterprise, explaining to him the special virtues of each grandfather, King Wilkinus, a mighty warrior in his day, h promised him, by the memory of their love, that she wou down to the sea-shore, my son," continued the smith, "i ancestress." And then with much sage advice, together with took leave of his son.

Wittich rode on for many days before he met with any ad
took off his armour, which he laid upon the bank, and begar
bridle. When half way across, three horsemen in full armou
where he was going. He told them that if they would wait u
with them. They agreed, but no sooner did they see him dre
they bethought them, that as they were in a strange place, it
comrade than an enemy. So they offered him peace instead
on together.

They rode up stream for a long way, and at last they cam
gates, and advanced to meet them.

“There are too many for us to conquer,” said the eldest o
us to hew our way across the bridge.”

“Let me go and offer them a silver piece as toll,” said Witt

Arrived at the bridge, he was informed that the only toll
right hand and right foot of the traveller. He explained th
benefit, and offered them a piece of money. Whereupon they

The three warriors meanwhile kept on a neighbouring he
Seeing that their new friend seemed hard beset, two of them
But before they reached the place of combat, seven of the ro

The heroes now rode on to the castle, where they foun
evening meal, their tongues were unloosed, and each told h
than about himself, and then he learnt that the eldest of hi
Heime, and the third Yarl Hornboge, who was also a comrad

“This is a stroke of good luck for me,” cried the young wa
the glorious king, and I have good hope that I may win the
cut through steel and stone. Just look at the hilt, is not the w

On hearing this, the three comrades grew more silent, a
followed their example.

The young hero was soon snoring in company with Hei
forebodings. He knew that Wittich’s sword could cut through
He crept noiselessly from his bed, and taking Mimung, comp
alike, but not the hilts. So with a grim smile of satisfac

exchanged them; then returned to his couch, and soon after

They started again on their journey next morning. In the proved to Hildebrand and his comrades that Wittich was of t

On hearing of the arrival of his old master and the rest, K them. But his astonishment was great when the young str another moment Dietrich had snatched it, and flung it in the

"Do you think it is part of a king's duty to make a target my men, seize the rascal, and hang him to the highest gallov

"The power to do so is on your side," answered Wittich, bring dishonour on your fair fame."

And Hildebrand said, "Sire, this is Wittich, son of Wielan but well worthy of a place in the ranks of your comrades."

"Very well, master," replied the king, "I will fight him as the hangman. It is my last word. Now come to the race-cours

The whole town assembled to witness the duel between Wittich's sword broke, and he stood defenceless before the k

"False father, you deceived me," he cried, "you gave me th

"Surrender, vagrant," cried Dietrich, "and then to the gallo

The young warrior's last hour had come, if Hildebrand had

"Sire," he said, "spare an unarmed man, and make him or our company."

"No. He shall go to the gallows. Stand back, master, that h

The master was sick at heart. He thought of how he had warrior, is your sword Mimung," he said, handing Wittich th

The battle began again, and Mimung showed its mettle no stroke laid his helmet open. "Surrender, king!" cried the wounds.

Then the master sprang forward.

"Wittich," he cried, "hold your hand, for it is not your ow comrade, and then we shall rule the world, for, next to the k

"Master," replied Wittich, "you helped me in my need and

"Glorious hero of Bern, I am your man henceforward, and

The king took his offered hand in his firm grasp, and made

Wildeber, Ilsan an

Ecke was the eldest son of the once powerful king Mentig Seeburg, who lived at Cologne in the Rhineland. Seeburg ha it, promised to bring him to her, or die in the attempt. She, successful. He went, met Dietrich, and after showing prodi king, who had learnt to love him during the few hours of the

When Dietrich returned to Bern after slaying Ecke, Heim seeing him again, that the king, much touched, gave him his received it with delight, and kissed the trusty blade twice or

"I will wear this sword for the glory of my king, and will r

"You are unworthy of the sword," cried Wittich, who had left your weapon in its sheath when the robbers were attacki

"Your self-sufficiency had made me angry, as your spiteful

Both men put their hands to their swords, but the king s the castle. When he learnt all that had happened, Dietrich to in a warrior to leave his comrade unaided in danger. But he really a hero, he might return to them once more.

"Well, sire, I think I shall win myself greater wealth by Na

Having thus spoken, the bold warrior sprang on his horse till he reached the Wisara (Weser), where he drew a ba plundered the defenceless country-people, and even bold wa robbery, he became the owner of a great hoard of wealth, wi

Dietrich had to tell his friends of his terrible combat wi armour he brought home with him, and the good sword subject, a monk entered the hall, and remained standing hu cowl was pulled forward so as to hide his face. The serva impatient, seized one of his persecutors by the ear, and held

When the king asked the reason of the noise, the monk ste
penitent. Dietrich came forward himself, and commande
astonishment was great when the monk pushed back his c
starvation. He was still more surprised when he saw the qua

“The holy man has the appetite of a wolf,” murmured the

“Five long years have I done penance by prayer, fasting a
venerable prior to go out into the world, and lay penance o
“ye be all miserable sinners with your continual feasting
converted, that your sins be blotted out.”

Then he intoned, in a loud ringing voice, “O Sanctissima.”



FRIAR ILSAN’S CONJURING OF WILDEBER.

Master Hildebrand had joined the group, and now exclaim

“Why, it is my own dear brother, Ilsan the Monk.”

“Culpa mea,” cried the monk; “touch me not, unholy brot
like the others.”

“But,” said the master, “we are all collected here togeth
dwarfs; so, my reverend brother, I now beg of you to lay asi

“Convert, say you? Yea, I have license to convert the heatl

With these words, the monk flung off his robes, and stood

“Here,” he cried, touching his broadsword, “is my preache
St. Kilian pray for me and for all of us, Ora pro nobis.”

He sat down amongst the warriors, who had all known t
psalms, now songs, and told merry tales of his life in the mo

Evening came on apace. Candles and torches were ligh
pattering in at the door. It was like a bear to look upon. Its
human form. The monster stood as though rooted to the thr
its spring.

“An evil spirit,” cried Ilsan; “a soul escaped from the purg
monster had turned its face to him.

“I will drag him back to his purgatory again,” cried bold
its fur. But pull and tug as he might, he could not move it b
that he fell head over heels into the middle of the hall.

Hornboge, Wittich, and other warriors tried to push the m

“Give room, brave comrades,” cried the angry king. “I w
sax.”

“Sire,” interrupted Master Hildebrand, catching him by th
precious stones, on the creature’s wrist? It is a man—perhap

“Well,” said the king, turning to his strange guest, “if yo
faithful comrade.”

On hearing these words, the strange guest threw off bo
followers clad in armour.

"I know you now," said Hildebrand. "You are the brave h
the gift of a swan-maiden, and makes your strength double
welcome guest to our king."

Wildeber seated himself by the master's side, emptied a gc

"Once, after fighting a hard fight with robbers, I lay down
splashing in the water. Turning my eyes in the direction of
garment lying on the bank, crept up to it softly, took it, and
not find it, she began to weep aloud. I went to her, and beg
wept the more, and said that she must die if she were depr
whereupon she gave me this bracelet, which increases my s
wander about as a bear with a boar's head, until the most f
did not obey her, she warned me that the virtue of the jew
thus spoken, she flew away. That is why I came to you in s
"and as you have received me into the ranks of your comrad
magic power as long as I live."

"Pax vobiscum!" stammered the monk, as he staggered aw
silence reigned in the palace.

DIE

King Dietrich was one day about to mount his horse, and
when a warrior rode into the court. The king at once knew h
Bern, but when Heime told him that he had been victoriou
receive him once more into the ranks of his comrades, and
Romaburg.

At Fritilaburg, where they rested, Dietrich accepted the c
Danish yeoman Soti; and enrolled him amongst his servants.

When they came to Romaburg, they were received with
lodging. But the emperor forgot one thing in his plans, and
the first night. On the second, his private resources being e
pieces; on the third, he pawned Wittich's goods for twenty;
the king. On the fifth day, when the king gave orders for th
he had pawned. Dietrich was astonished and angry when he
him before Ermenrich, who at once said he would pay the su

his court made merry at Ilmenrik's expense, especially Walt
wolf, and well up in strange knowledge of all kinds. Ilmenri
of strength and skill from his father, such as putting the st
head against the lord of Wasgenstein's that he could beat hir

Such skill as Ilmenrik displayed had never been seen bef
Wasgenstein. The emperor then called the young victor to hi

"Hearken to me, young sir," he said; "I will buy the hea
blood is the old law."

"Fear not, sire," answered Ilmenrik, "the head of the bra
wish to do me a kindness, lend me so much money as I have
weapons, garments, and horses that I pawned."

"Treasurer," said the emperor, turning to one of his mini
redeem his pledges, and another sixty marks to fill his purse.

"Thank you, my lord," returned the young man, "I do not
will see that I lack nothing; but if you will keep us another
better feast than before, and also my master, all his warriors
I have to pawn horses and coats of mail again."

The warriors all laughed at the merry youth, but Heime
should cost him his life.

The feast which the servant prepared them was of royal
feared that his property was again in pawn. The young fellow
knew who had given him that scar on his forehead. Heime a
he would know him again in a moment, and that the scar sh

Ilmenrik replied:

"Methinks, bold warrior, your memory has gone a-wool-ga
Dietleib whom you and your robbers attacked as he was
Ingram and his companions, but you escaped with that w
believe me, I have a witness here that will prove my word
remain a secret between us."

Towards the end of the feast, Dietrich told the youth that
the ranks of his comrades; and he, thanking him, answered t
deeds were known far and wide.

All the king's followers, except Heime, received the young
the king, and proved himself his trusty comrade in many a
more of the world; so after a time he took service under Etze
Father and son together were the doers of many a daring
them the land of Steiermark (Styria) as a fief. Biterolf gav
Styrian, but who often appears in story by his right name of



DWARFS BIND THE SLEEPING HEROES.

I
ADVENTURES.

KING LAURIN AND TH

Hildebrand at his castle of Garden. He looked sadder than o
smile. Hildebrand inquired the cause of his sadness, and h
who had kept house for him in Styria. One day, when she

looking on, she suddenly vanished from the circle, and no or

"Since then," he continued, "I have learnt from a magician darkness, and carried her off to his hollow mountain. This Rose-garden. Now, good master, I have come to you for advi

"It is a ticklish matter," said Hildebrand, "and may cost m our other comrades, and then we can agree in council what because of the extent of his empire, but from his knowledge

When the heroes heard what had brought Hildebrand and adventure himself alone upon the quest, fetch home the m bound to his saddle-bow. Dietleib then asked Hildebrand if but that Laurin watched over the garden himself, and exa enough to venture within its bounds, and spoil the roses.

"He cannot exact this tribute," said Wittich, "unless he get

"Well then," added the king, "we will not touch the love hands of the dwarf, and that is a labour beseeming a warrior

The heroes all swore to do no hurt to the garden, and tl were Hildebrand, Dietrich, Dietleib, Wittich, and Wolfhart.

Their road led them northward among the wild mountai they trod, but they recked nothing of fatigue or danger, for garden: a lovely place, where spring reigned eternally, mal their eyes on the beautiful sight, and felt as though they had

Wolfhart was the first to break the spell: setting spurs to towards the garden. His mad career was soon checked by break open the door, but in vain; his comrades came to his a The garden was still defended by a golden thread, such as u warriors trod down the thread, and then, in spite of Hilde garden. Dietrich did not join in the work of destruction, but

Suddenly Hildebrand called out, "Draw your swords! Here

They all looked up, and saw something bright advancing form of a horseman riding a steed that was swift as the wir armour. His helmet was of specially beautiful workmanshi midst of which a carbuncle blazed like a sun. On beholdi

exclaimed angrily:

"What harm have I ever done you, robbers as you are, tha me, why did you not send me a challenge like honourable r right hand and left foot."

"If you are King Laurin," answered Dietrich, "we do indee cannot afford to lose our right hands, for we require them t ride were we deprived of them."

"He would be a coward who talked of paying any fine ex that hop-o'-my-thumb, together with the cat he is riding, ag such tiny pieces that even his grasshopper subjects can neve

Upon this Laurin answered in words of defiance, and t overthrow the moment he felt the touch of the dwarf's spea was thrown from his saddle at the first encounter.

Laurin sprang from his horse, drew out a large knife, a Dietrich sprang forward to rescue his comrade.

"Do not venture the spear thrust, but close with him," sai of which you must deprive him; and these are, a ring with strength of twelve men round his waist, and in his pocket a on."

After a long and fierce wrestle, Dietrich managed to get p charge. Again the combat raged, neither side gaining any Laurin granted.

The truce over, the two kings renewed the fight. Dietrich clasped him round the knees so tight that he fell backwards slipped from his hand. Hildebrand then rushed forward an this done than Laurin went out of sight. Dietrich still felt the rage at his own powerlessness, he forgot the pain of his wo in the direction in which he heard the whistling of the invisi away the cap of darkness, and Laurin stood before him prayi

"I shall first cut off your right hand and left foot, and th angered hero, setting off in pursuit of the dwarf, who now to

"Save me, Dietleib, my dear brother-in-law," cried Laurin,

Dietleib swung the little creature on horseback before hir
and told him to hide himself until the king's anger was abate

Coming back to the place of combat, the warrior found Di

"I must have either the dwarf's head or yours," cried Dietr

In another moment their swords were flashing; a second f
by main force, while Wittich did the same to Dietleib. Afte
men, and also in gaining grace for the dwarfs. Later still the
other and with Laurin, who was then and there admitted as

This point settled, the dwarf proposed to show them the
then give his sister to him as wife, with the usual ceremonie

"It is the old law," answered the hero of Steierland, "that
recovered by her friends, she should have free choice giv
people. Are you willing that it should be so in this case?"

"By all means," said the dwarf. "Now let us go. Do you
horse, that my eyes may no longer be pained by seeing the
again in May."

The journey to the snow-capped mountain was much lon
following day. Below the snow, they came to a meadow tha
the perfume of flowers. Birds were singing in the branches
followed Laurin into the dark entrance of his undergrounc
distrust was Wittich, who had not forgotten the thrust of the

In King Lau

A soft twilight reigned in the vast hall of the palace to wh
with gold and silver. The floor was formed of a single aga
carbuncles like stars in the blue sky of night. All at once it
maidens. Her girdle and necklace were jewelled, and in her
brightness of day wherever it came. But the lady herself wa
off her face. She seated herself beside Laurin, and signed to
embraced him and asked him many questions about her old
a perfect host, and his guests were soon quite at their ease.
the dwarf king left the hall, and Dietleib seized the opportu

underground paradise as its queen. She answered with tea
would rather be a peasant girl in the upper world than a q
Laurin was very good and kind, yet he was not as other m
attempt.

Laurin now returned, and asked the hero if he would like
talking with him for some time. At last he told him that his
spared him because he was his brother-in-law.

“Traitor, false dwarf!” cried Dietleib. “I live and die with r

He started forward, but the dwarf was gone, and the door

Laurin then returned to the hall, filled the goblets of the v
wine, which would insure them a good night’s rest. They dic
a heavy drugged sleep fell upon them. Then turning to the
must die in punishment for the wreck they had made of his
distant room, that he might escape the fate of his comrades.
out his cruel purpose. He gave her no distinct answer, but re

As soon as the queen had retired, he sounded his horn, an
the room. He commanded them to bind the warriors so tigh
that he had them dragged to a dungeon, where they might r
seen his orders carried out, he went to bed, and began to th
queen, or to punish them for their evil deed. The last seeme
intended slaughter of his helpless victims.

Dietrich awoke soon after midnight; he felt that he was l
they were as powerless as he. Then Dietrich’s wrath was rou
bound one hand, and left it free. After that, it was a matter
then to set his comrades at liberty. What was to be done nc
neither weapon nor coat of mail. They were helpless victims
in despair, they were startled by hearing a woman’s voice as

“We thank you, noble queen,” answered Hildebrand, “we a

So Künhild opened the door, and appeared on the thres
enforce silence, and led the way to where the heroes’ armou
of them a ring, by means of which he could see the dwarfs, e

“Hurrah!” cried Wolfhart. “We can make as much noise a

in our hands."

Laurin, wakened by Wolfhart's loud tones, knew that the
to his assistance. The battle began, and raged for a long tin
was pleased in his heart of hearts that matters had turned o
war better than trickery. At length the underground force
prisoner.

Dietrich spared the life of the dwarf king at fair Künhild
mountain to Sintram, another dwarf of high rank, for a yea
heroes returned to Bern, taking Laurin with them as a prison

There was great joy in Bern at the return of the heroes
unfortunate Laurin was laughed at by all. There was only
Künhild. One day she met him when he was wandering ab
comfort him, and told him he would soon gain the king's frie

"Ah," he laughed bitterly; "they think that they have kick
You may know what I intend to do. I have sent to inform W
the Caucasus to Sinai, of what has happened, and he is com
to win the day, slay strong Dietrich and his comrades, and
back to my kingdom, and replant my Rose Garden, that it m

"Laurin," she answered, "you carried me away from hon
your love, and feel myself honoured by its greatness. I cann
be your queen in the Rose Garden, if you will think of love a

She left him, and he sat pondering the matter for a long ti

A few days afterwards, Dietrich came to the Dwarf Kin
prisoner long enough, that he must now sit with his comrade

"And then," continued the king, "I will go with you to you

The dwarf silently followed the king into the hall. He sat
he would take when his uncle came.

But lovely Künhild appeared and filled his goblet, saying
hatred, and he cried, emptying the goblet to the last drop,—

"Henceforward I am your faithful comrade in life and deat

Whilst the warriors were still at the feast, a messenger fro

name of his master, unless Laurin were at once restored to h
money and all the weapons in the country, as well as the ri
the destruction of the Rose Garden.

Dietrich answered proudly, that he intended to keep his m

"And tell him," added Laurin, "that I send him my thanks
free, and have entered into a bond of love and friendship wi

Both sides prepared for battle, but before a blow was stru
between Walberan and Dietrich. His uncle told him he was
his words. So the fight began, and raged furiously for many
met, and challenged each other to single combat. It was a
seemed to the onlookers as if both must die. Suddenly Lauri
round King Walberan, and entreated him to make peace. A
angry Dietrich, and after much expenditure of words, the pe

So the fighting was changed to feasting, and the kings en
hero of Bern made a long speech in praise of Laurin, who h
whom he therefore restored the free and independent rule
Queen Virginal came forward, leading fair Künhild, and la
knew he would regard her reward of his faithfulness as the g
be his wife if her brother did not object. As no dissentient vo

In the May-month of the following year, when the roses w
beautiful palace, which they had built in the Rose Garden.
who go in search of it from mere curiosity, it remains ever in

To this day, Laurin and Künhild show themselves at odd
who are reported to have had a distant glimpse of the wonde



KING LAURIN'S FEAST.

THE GREAT ROSE GARD

and man of valour. The number of his comrades had much i

Once when the king was feasting with many of his comra that no ruler on earth had such heroes about him, that no comrades, and that none might be compared with them. T The king turned to him, and asked whether in all his journe

"That I have," cried Herbrand. "I have seen some that h Worms, near the River Rhine, in the land of Burgundy. It is and-a-half broad. The queen and her ladies tend it themsel one enter the garden without the queen's permission. Whoe

giant or warrior, has been able to withstand them."

"Let us go and pluck the roses that have been watered comrades and I will get the better of the guard."

"If you mean to try your luck," said Herbrand, "you must from lovely women."

"Ah, well," said the old master, "for the sake of a rose an beard. He who wishes to pluck roses or kiss women will find



ILSAN TAKES LEAVE OF THE HOLY BROTHEF

Trusty Eckehart and a few more of the comrades agreed were like. But Dietrich loudly declared that he was not goir fame; and that if his comrades did not wish to go with him, all who were present agreed to go. The names of those wl

Hildebrand, strong Wittich, Henne called the Grim, Wolfh
Trusty Eckehart, and Hertnit, Prince of the Reussen; but the
the twelve watchmen of the garden. Hildebrand knew what

"Good Rüdiger of Bechelaren will not refuse to be the t
twelfth my pious brother, the monk Ilsan."

They started forth at once to induce the chosen three to
Danube. Rüdiger received them hospitably, and at once cons
absence from Etzel, whose margrave he was. The heroes the
home, but his father Biterolf, who was there, earnestly ent
said, only a fool would undertake a conflict for life or death
kiss. But when they met the young hero a short time after, t
on to Münchenzell, the monastery to which Hildebrand's
journey, he went straight to the abbot, and asked leave to ac
him that such was scarcely a monkish quest, but Ilsan grew
eyes as seemly for a monk as for any other man, that the a
donned his armour under his monkish dress, and started wi
bound on one of Dietrich's adventures, while his brother r
would not end well, seeing it was no saintly quest, but a wor

The heroes went first to Bern, which was to be the gener
he had been detained by his visit to Etzel. Rüdiger was no
Worms, to inform him of their intended invasion of the Rose
was received as an old friend by the king, who rejoiced to he

The garden was entered on the appointed day, and the
against twelve, and yet always one against one. It was a ter
watered them with his heart's blood. When proud Wolfhar
offered him by a lovely maiden, and contented himself with
foot, clad in his grey robes. He jumped about among the ros
a madman to deal with. But he soon found that his reveren
vanquished, a wiser man, though wounded almost to the d
head, but when he kissed the lovely maid who gave it him
lips. Seeing this, he said with comical disgust,—

"The maidens of Rhineland are fair to see,
But far too tender to pleasure me."

Many other heroes received the prize of victory, while o
sunset. The brave hero of Bern soon afterwards returned hor



IV. DIETRICH, TH

MARCH

Dietrich lived in friendship with Etzel, king of the Huns, f
hero came back from Burgundy, he had sent ambassador
difficulty. It was not long before he was reminded of this pro

The Margrave, who was known in all lands by the title o
come before, for he was a welcome guest. On such occasion
tales of noble and doughty deeds. Rüdiger told amongst otl
left that country, and taken service under King Etzel, who
their acquaintance. He went on to relate how King Etzel, po
hardships and homelessness of his early youth.

"Yes, truly," interrupted Master Hildebrand, "and I know a
when Wilkinus was ruler of the Wilkin-men——"

"Ha! my great-grandfather!" cried Wittich. "What have yo

"I only know," continued the master, "that he was a mig
others, King Hertnit. After the death of Wilkinus, Hertnit re
to acknowledge him as his liege lord. The conquered kin
satisfied, although he had four gigantic sons, namely, Asperi
always kept chained up, because he did so much destructi
divided his kingdom amongst his three sons. Osantrix (Ose

over the Reussen, and Ylias became yarl of the Greeks. The
king of the Huns. He won her by trickery and force, with th
became allies after the marriage, but they could not conque
Huns, and burnt, destroyed, or stole whatever they laid thei
lived so far away that their help always arrived too late. Th
now known as King Etzel, or Attila as he is sometimes cal
father's death had to allow his brother Ortnit to succeed to
with nothing but his armour and a good sword. But Fri
themselves to the young hero, and accompanied him in hi
Melias died, the notables of the land elected their former e
and invader became the sovereign and protector of the coun

"Yes," returned Rüdiger, "that is quite true, and there i
Helche), the beautiful daughter of Osantrix, chief of the Wil
received; but when I told the king the object of my missi
consent to such a marriage, for Etzel was not the rightful chi
wife, the daughter of Melias. He cared not when I threatene
the country with his men; and when, after much fighting,
advantage.

"A year later, I went back with a number of brave men,
done, I stained my face, and otherwise disguised by a long
servant of the late King Melias, that I had been ill-treated
refuge with him. This story gained me his confidence, and h
me his ambassador. I told the maiden of Etzel's wooing, and
she was very angry, but at last consented to marry him.

"One moonlight night, I brought horses to the gates of th
the bars, and carried off the princesses. We were pursued,
were awaiting me. I had scarcely time to send a message to
siege to our stronghold; but we managed to defend ourselve
to withdraw. Ever since then, there has been a constant pred
now invaded our land with a large army. He is accompani
Now, noble Dietrich, Etzel thinks that if you will come and h

"Ah well! If my dear comrade Wildeber will go with me
with the giants."

Dietrich promised his help, and ordered all preparations

in time, for the two armies were standing opposite each othe

Dietrich and his men took up their position in the centr proudly above their heads, and Wittich rushed foremost in gave him a blow on the helmet with his iron club. The drag blow, and although Wieland's work did not break, the herc Over him rushed the men-at-arms in the wild *mêlée*. Heime ; of Wittich's hand, for he held him to be dead. When the wil field, and the Huns pursued them, plundering where they c late. He could not prevent his uncle's defeat, but he found W prisoner.

The victors feasted at Susat, and rejoiced over their great his men; and, worst than all, his friend and comrade, Wittic battle-field. All wondered what had become of him. When ready for his departure, Wildeber came to him, and asked fc without Wittich. Dietrich willingly gave his consent, for he that perhaps Wittich might be yet alive, and that his friend r

The next day, Wildeber went out hunting, and slew a be Isung, the minstrel, and arranged with him a plan to free W helped him to draw the skin over his armour, and fasten it u stronghold of the chief of the Wilkin-men.

Now wandering players and merry-andrews, of every sort, his bear were well received.

Osantrix laughed heartily at the marvellous agility of the and even Widolf, the grim giant, who was led about with a c life, making the halls shake with the sound. Suddenly it oc twelve boar-hounds on the bear, to see how strong it was.

Isung vainly entreated the king to forbear the cruel sport the gold in the royal treasury; but Osantrix was not to be pe began. To the astonishment of all, the boar-hounds were eitl

Osantrix sprang angrily to his feet, and slashed at the cr inside the bear-skin saved the hero's life. Another moment, and split his head open. The second blow did to death grim by his friend when the Wilkin-men sought to avenge their k

the player and his wild beast.

Wildeber now threw off the bear-skin, took the helmet Wittich. The heroes searched the palace. They found Wittic the sword Mimung could they discover.

At length they lighted on him in a damp, dark dungeon, recognisable. Fresh air, food, and wine soon made a chan another sword, saying that none could be as good as Mimun

"Now let us begone," said Isung, "lest the Wilkin-men sho

So Wildeber and he helped themselves to horses from the

"Of a truth," cried King Etzel, when he heard their story, brought the war to an end unaided. The lord of Bern is rich own lives to serve a brother-in-arms."

He kept the heroes for several days to recruit their strengt

Dietrich was overjoyed to see his brave warriors again, an Wittich was silent, and had no appetite for wine or food, sorrowed for the loss of Mimung, his father's best gift, anc every land.

"I have a notion that you need not take so long a journey Heime wears is as like Wieland's work as one drop of blood

The conversation was interrupted by the arrival of two Ermenrich, Dietrich's uncle, to tell the hero that Yarl Rimste Ermenrich, therefore, entreated his nephew's aid, and Dietri

March agai

Before starting, Wittich said that he could not go to Ri alleging that it was his by right of war; but the king smoo comrade during the campaign.

The warriors set out. The rebel yarl proved himself a to months had passed, his castle seemed as impregnable as eve

One moonlight night when Wittich was out alone, he met to belong to the enemy. They fought, and Wittich slew their

the waist. The other five fled in terror, lest a like fate shou
was the yarl himself that he had slain, so he returned to tl
comrades what had chanced, and how the war was now at a

"He is indeed a bold warrior," said Heime sarcastically; "
bit better than a woman. But now, I must have Mimung bacl

"Let me first try it on your head, false comrade," answere
a strange land, and were traitor enough to rob him of his
your meanness."

Heime drew his sword Nagelring, and a fight was immir
commanded them on their allegiance to keep the peace.

Ermenrich rejoiced to hear of Wittich's deed, and that the
men, and asked the royal hero to give Wittich leave of abs
and undertake the government of her rich fief of Drachenfel
comrade's good fortune, and at parting, he merely reminded

Not long afterwards Wittich was married to Bolfriana,
Drachenfels, which extends to Fritilaburg (Friedburg?), a
mighty chief, as he had told his father that he would. Heim
to take the oath of allegiance. He received other lands from
gold besides.

RANDWER GIVES SWANHILD A NOSEGAY.

ERMENRICH TURNS AGA

THE HA

E

out to the east and west, and many kings owed him fealty. H
was of the utmost use to him. Chief among these was Sibi
labours by Ribestein, the head of the royal household, an
influence with the emperor to keep him true to his alliance
hearts, his imperial highness was not a little jealous. But a
Romaburg.

Sibich had a young and beautiful wife, of whom he wa
journey, and during his absence did him foul wrong. When
emperor's treachery, he was filled with wrath. At first, he s
he had thought of a subtler mode of vengeance. He desire
family, to deprive him of all his allies, and finally have hi
was carried out with great craft and intelligence.

Sibich's first step was to buy over Ribestein to his desig
man's weak point. This done, Ribestein agreed to write lette
Ancona, the prince of Milan, and others, warning him that h

The evil deed was easily accomplished, as Ribestein had c
the empire. Ermenrich was naturally of a suspicious disposit
Sibich as to what were best to be done, and the false counse
Randolt, ostensibly to demand payment of the tribute the ya
be slain. The emperor did as he was advised, and Sibich too
horror went through the land, and Ermenrich was hated by a

Reginbald, the second son, met his death in a different fas
sent him on a pretended mission to England.

One son alone remained, Randwer, the third and young
guile. That helped him nothing, however. One day, in the in
a bunch of flowers, when they were out hunting with the w
false Sibich, ordered Swanhild to be trampled under foot by
He was now alone in the world, a childless old man.

"Well, Ribestein," said the marshal to his accomplice, "we
are the Harlungs, Imbreke and Fritele, who live at Breisach,
of Bern. The Harlungs and the hero are both brother's childı
tell you the story.

"Ermenrich's grandfather left two sons besides him—name
of Lombardy, and Dieter, surnamed Harlung, who during
hoard of red gold. Now listen to this. If we can only get rid c
ears as wide as you can—you and I can divide between us th

Ribestein jumped at the proposal as a fish jumps out of
such a thing before; but he quickly understood what was req

The Harlungs were first brought under suspicion. Letters
Fritele, and even from their governor Eckehart, address
Ermenrich's crimes in the darkest colours. One of the letters
his desperate wickedness, slain his own children, he must h
was so angry when he read these words, that he determined

The troops were called out without any one knowing a
towards the Rhine till they reached Tralenburg, which belo

horsemen kept watch by the river. When they saw the arm
swam with their horses across the river. They gave the alarr
the science of war; but they were still very young, and Eck
the state. When the Harlungs saw their uncle's banner, they
it was a warlike and not a peaceful visit. Wittich and Hei
Ermenrich's plans they rode away to Breisach to warn the
together, they became good friends again.

Tralenburg was at length reduced by fire and taken by sto
to be erected, and the two brothers to be at once hung there
the emperor was obeyed without remonstrance. Ermenrich r
search for the rich hoard the murdered princes had inherit
The emperor rewarded his army richly, and kept the rest of t

Meanwhile Heime had returned. He had come back intenc
up his fief. But on receiving a large share of the booty, he
taking the treasure to Romaburg. When he saw the heap of
portion of it should find its way to Studa's grange, and nc
uttered in every land against the emperor. Eckehart brough
burned when he heard it. He said the time would surely c
punish his evil counsellors Sibich and Ribestein. The fiery y
once alone with Eckehart to avenge the murder. But their fa

"What is only put off may yet be done," said Alphar to his

Somewhere about this time Sibich and Ribestein met to hc

"Another stone is out of the way," said Sibich; "now we
that stands in our way."

The accomplices felt that they must be careful and not pu
soul was darkened by the crimes he had committed, and v
ghosts of those whose death he had compassed,—and, in tl
they felt it would be safer to gain over as many as possible
than they wished, for Ermenrich's uneasy conscience would

The first step taken was to demand tribute of Dietrich
Amelungs to levy the tribute. The messenger returned in a
had flatly refused to pay what he demanded, for they had al
to tell the murderer of the Harlungs to come himself and tak

spear's point and the sword's edge.

The emperor sent Heime to Bern to tell Dietrich that if he on the highest gallows.

Heime was well received in Bern. Dietrich thought that he emperor's message, the hero asked him if he remembered served out his bond, that he was now a vassal of the em therefore owed service. Therewith he took his leave.

Heime was not long gone, when Wittich appeared. He gall

"Arm, comrades, arm!" he cried, "there is not a moment rode on before to warn you of his coming. Faithless Sibich i his hands is not far from death."

Dietrich reminded him of his oath, but like Heime he excu

The Norns appeared at this time to have thrown their da him after another. From Wittich he hastened to the sick q morning she died, and grief for her loss prevented his Hildebrand, however, was not idle. He had summoned all th the Amelungs. And the night before the queen's death, man of Pola (in Istria), and the king's faithful comrade, Dietleib o

In the morning the old master called the king, and told hi hero of Bern made a mighty effort to master his grief. He p away on his march to the great battle.

The emperor had already subdued the duke of Spoleto, a and not suspecting any surprise, he and his men all went to of his camp. While the others rested, Hildebrand rode for unprepared, he advised an immediate onslaught.

The imperial forces were suddenly aroused by the battle ready for the fray. The battle raged furiously. Dietrich and made them fight with the more desperation. And which of th

Wolfhart cried, "If we *must* die, let each man throw his shi

He did as he said, and Sigestab and Eckehart followed his

Wittich and Heime fought bravely as of old, but they avoi

general flight. For the imperial troops were routed by a flank

Ermenrich went back to Romaburg in a very bad humour. into a scrape, yet he refrained, as he hardly knew what he co

Dietrich sent the treasure gained in Milan home to Bern Pola undertook to provide pack-horses on which to convey reached the lake of Garden, and saw the stars mirrored in thought, that being in the land of the Wolfings, they need no wearied men hailed his proposition with joy, and, after supp soft turf. Hildebrand with ten of his followers tried to keep a water acted on them like a lullaby, and soon they were sleep

At daybreak they were roughly wakened. Wild faces glare echoed in their ears. Four of the warriors, who had sough others were all bound and carried away with the treasure.

They had not been prisoners long before the comrades saw faithless Sibich. He had heard of their journey in charge of t lain in wait near the lake, and had then fallen upon the sle by cunning.

One warrior had escaped the common misfortune, and thi a little apart from the rest, when Sibich's men fell on the c the men-at-arms, mounted his horse and fled to Bern, a bea Ermenrich had again invaded the country, had taken Milan, Dietrich's men had deserted him, and joined the enemy.

The warriors who preserved their faith, and were determ message was sent to Ermenrich that the hero of Bern was w The answer he received was, that he might do with his priso condemned to be hanged. This was the worst news Dietrich l

Then the lady Ute, Hildebrand's high-hearted wife, arose, camp and entered the presence of Ermenrich. She offered h jewels, and those of all the other women and maidens of Be his already, and that if the king wished his comrades to be foot, and leading their horses.

Hildebrand's wife could not bear to hear that. She had fa told him proudly that the heroes of Bern and their wive

dishonour. The women left the camp in deep sorrow.

When Dietrich heard the bad news, he had a long strug numbers to support him, but victory was always uncertai Berchtung, brave Wolfhart, Amelolt, Sigeband, Helmschrot, At length he bowed his head to necessity. He consented to E

On being set free from prison, his comrades received th souls, three and forty men in all, accompanied their lord o king went away, and even in foreign lands the fate of Dietric

The heroes would not mount their horses when they ha walked on unheeding over the wild mountain roads. So th Danubian land, and approached Bechelaren, where Marg welcome.

One day, when they had been some time at Bechelaren, desolated home and the smiling land he saw before him, sa and unity, and he would like to remain there for ever and fo

Wolfhart reproached him vehemently for wishing to forg fight till my last drop of blood is shed."

"Not so fast, young hero," answered the Margrave, "King I you to the court at Susat, and am certain that he will help yo



WALTER AND HILDEGUNDE TAKEN AS HOSTAGES I

VI. KING ETZEL, WALTER OF W.

When Etzel became king of the Huns, he was the mighties collected a great army, and falling upon the land of the Frankish king was unprepared to defend himself, so he paid the boy Hagen of Tronje (Tronege). His own son was too you

The Huns went on to Burgundy, where they also levied tri a child of four years old. They were equally successful with gave them his young son Walter as hostage.

Hagen and Walter early showed great warlike ability. The the German fashion, and few could equal them in manly spo with the queen. Time went on, and these young people al Walter to Hunnish maidens of high degree, so as to confirm

but the youths did not admire the beauties of that nation, attracted by slender Hildegunde's rosy mouth, fair curls, an was more pleasing in her eyes than the bow-legged Hun who

Meanwhile the Franks and Burgundians had thrown off th then condition of affairs. Hagen one day found out what ha to his own people, but, according to another, was sent hom with him, for he knew his bravery and worth.

Once when the king returned with his warriors from cor Hildegunde to sing him a song. The maiden complied, and s to return to them once more, when the hero came for whom had expected; he had raised the wine-cup to his lips too oft watch Walter and the maiden, lest they should fly together.

Walter, too, had understood the meaning of the song, Hildegunde regarding their flight.

"Do not sleep to-night," he whispered one evening, "but silver as you can carry out of the seventh chest; it is part o long ago. Put the money you have taken in two caskets, and at the gate with two saddled horses. We shall be gone a long them."



WALTER AND HILDEGUNDE HALT IN THE FOREST.

They carried out Walter's plan in every particular, and ma
to the mountains of Wasgengau (Vosges), in the highest of v
entrance that one man could there defend himself against a
sleep during their long and toilsome journey, so he asked th
upon them. He had not been long asleep when Hildegund
hero, telling him that the Huns were upon them.

"These are not Huns, but Burgundians," he answered, sta
King Gunther, to demand that the treasure should be given
but this was refused, and the fray began. But the assailants c
from the Huns to throw the javelin, was able to kill them c
with his sword. Hagen had come with Gunther's men, but h

when he saw his friends falling fast, his hand involuntarily
king, and advised him to try an ambush.

Next day, as Walter and Hildegunde were continuing thei
men in complete armour, who sprang out upon them from b
Despairing of flight, Walter leapt off his horse, and they d
right, now to the left, to avoid their blows; at length his sw
entered the bone of the leg. He stood over the fallen king,
Hagen disabled his sword-arm. He dropt the sword, but wi
eye. Seeing them all three disabled, Hildegunde came forw
which she and Walter went on their way in peace. They ar
married. The young hero in later days always took part w
Dietleib challenged him at Romaburg.





VII. ETZEL AND DIETRICH

But now we must return to Dietrich and Etzel. When the
Amelungs from the tyranny of the usurper, he found that
already overfull with his own quarrels.

Waldemar, king of the Reussen, and brother of that Osa
had married, now invaded his borders, and threatened to o
the latter did not hesitate to grant it.

The war lasted a long time. Many men were slain, and mu
retire. Dietrich himself was so severely wounded that it wa
thing which happened during the war that saddened
remembrance of the way in which Etzel had on one occasic
man. Indeed every one felt that the defeat of the Reussen
Bern than to any other cause.

Etzel pursued the enemy within their own borders, and fo

Dietrich was held in high honour by the Huns, but they
land, and he felt sad at heart. At last Queen Helche though
beautiful niece Herrat to wife, and then they might rule toge
Herrat made no objection to the marriage, which was soon a
of Bern would ever be content to sink into the position of
made of such slight stuff, and Etzel was obliged after all to g





VIII. THE RAVEN-FIGHT

DIETRICH G

"Going back to Bern! Dietrich is going to Bern! We are to ha
the land of the Huns.

Yes; Dietrich was really going back, accompanied by ma
army. Even Etzel's two sons, mere boys as they were, ins
mountains and fair plains of Lombardy. Amelolt (Amelung)
and took the fortress. But the old master had not time to sta
were not in the castle at the time, and he had to rejoin th
(Padua), which Dietrich failed to subdue. The army, leavin
heard that Ermenrich's men had been expelled by the citizen

At length the hero was at home in his beloved Bern, wh
rest; for a few days after his arrival, Alpher came, bringing
Emperor Ermenrich was besieging his town, therefore he b
march, and arrived unexpectedly in the neighbourhood of th

It was of no use to send out scouts. The foe lay hidden in
undertake to gain the enemy's outpost, and immediately you
Others wished to have the duty; but he had spoken first, and

ALPHART

The youthful hero rode on towards the dangerous outpo
rattling from helm and shield. But they did no harm, for hi
up to him, and desired him to yield, saying that he might
and would return the weapon to Alphart when he was ranso

"What?" cried the hero, "are you Duke Wölfing, the only t
from my hands."

The combat between the two men was short. Alphart slev
avenge him, but the young hero killed half of them, and put

"A spirit from the nethermost hell has come to fight for D
single-handed, and we ourselves hardly escaped with our liv

"Do you not know that the hero of Bern is a son of the d
father should come to his child's assistance? No mortal man

"I will go out and see if it be not made of flesh and blood,
care not; I must have a turn with it."

He armed himself quickly, and caught up a sword withou
saved a short time before, offered to go with him, and aveng

Alphart recognised the men from a distance.

"Ye are two faithless comrades," he cried, "and have come

The combat between him and Wittich began forthwith, a
twice felled to the ground. In his sore distress, he called on
considered dishonourable for two warriors to fight against o
would not be slain on the spot, Heime sprang forward, and
to his feet again. After which both warriors attacked the you

Alphart was as active on foot as he was strong of hand. H
went on. The three warriors bled from many wounds; but it

"Faithless comrades that ye are," sighed the dying Alpha
the grave."

The conquerors left the place of combat in silence. They
was bloody, and they were sorely wounded. The men-at-arm

"They have been fighting with that spirit from hell, have s

The news of Alphart's death was received with deep sorro
emperor on the following day, and made all necessary dispo

THE I

Master Hildebrand held watch. Not contented with keepi
see with his own eyes what was passing within their lines. A
Suddenly the old master and his companion, Eckehart, hearc
the same moment the moon broke through the mist, and th
of Ermenrich's men, was at the same time a friend of theirs
might advise Dietrich, he would counsel him to return to the
emperor was too powerful to be overthrown.

After taking leave of their friend, Hildebrand looked abou which he could outflank the imperial forces unperceived. should take three divisions by this path, and fall upon the attack in front, the moment he heard Hildebrand's horn sour

No sooner had the sun risen than the battle began. Great task to tell of each hero's achievements. Among those who worthy of their name.

During the course of that day, Dietrich and Wittich met a when Wittich, led by his evil star, or by his companion, Rinc go, and, remounting, galloped across the valley towards the saw the king riding towards him, his face distorted by the a mouth like flames of fire, a terror he had never known befo by Rinold.

"Halt, cowards, halt!" cried the king. "Two against one! su

"Halt, comrade!" said Rinold, "I cannot bear the shame of

Wittich turned; but no sooner did he see the terrible face leaving Rinold alone to bear the brunt of the attack.

"Stop, traitor," shouted Dietrich. "You have the sword M Bern, and do you now fear to stand?"

But Wittich, by encouraging words, and a free use of the the same, and Falcon was even fleeter than Wittich's galla shore. The fugitive warrior reached the strand. He could fly and a woman's head rose out of the waves.

"Wachilde—ancestress—save me—hide me from that spiri

And Wachilde received him in her arms, and bore him hesitate to follow. The waters swept over him and his horse the shore. The king looked all about, but Wittich had vani king returned to the camp, having found neither the vengea

The Huns declared that they would return home as soon heard their determination unmoved. He was thinking of tho what he could to induce them to follow up the victory that had had enough of fighting at the battle of Ravenna.

Broken-hearted, Dietrich returned to King Etzel, by whom
had come and gone. He sank into a state of sorrowful broo
came to him, and spoke words of comfort and encouragemei
Lombardy, accompanied by the Queen.

IX. GOIN

To G

The King, Queen, and the old Master took leave of Etzel,
interest in their coming or going.

The travellers at length came to a wooded hill with a cast
named Elsung, who had always been an enemy of the Ame
led the way, bade the king be prepared. He did not speak
followed by some horsemen. The robber-knight drew rein
horses and armour, Hildebrand's long beard, and the beautif

"We need our horses and armour that we may fight in t
spare the woman, for she acts as our cook."

"Nay, then, you are Amelungs yourselves," cried Elsung ransom. If you refuse, I will have your heads as well, that I n

The heroes deigned no further answer. They paid another spears, and with such hearty good will that Elsung's men w was finally overthrown and bound.

As Hildebrand was about to tie the prisoner to a horse, Els

"You are Ermenrich's men, so I will tell you the news th whom the emperor had trodden to death by horses, have fall

"Ha!" cried the hero of Bern, "do you bring such good new

The travellers now pursued their journey, and after me Garden, where they were at first received with suspicion; b him, and Hadubrand was introduced to his brave old father,

To

The hero of Bern was welcomed with the utmost joy by h celebrated warriors numbered brave Lodwig and his son Heime wanting; he had done penance for his sins in a clois renew his oath, death having released him from the fealty he

Dietrich's and Sibich's forces met. A terrible battle took before him. Eckehart and Hache sought untiringly for faithle although he had cast from him all signs of the imperial dig neck, swung him before him on his horse, and galloped back

"Remember the Harlungs," he cried, and immediately orde

Sibich entreated for life, bare life. He offered much red go

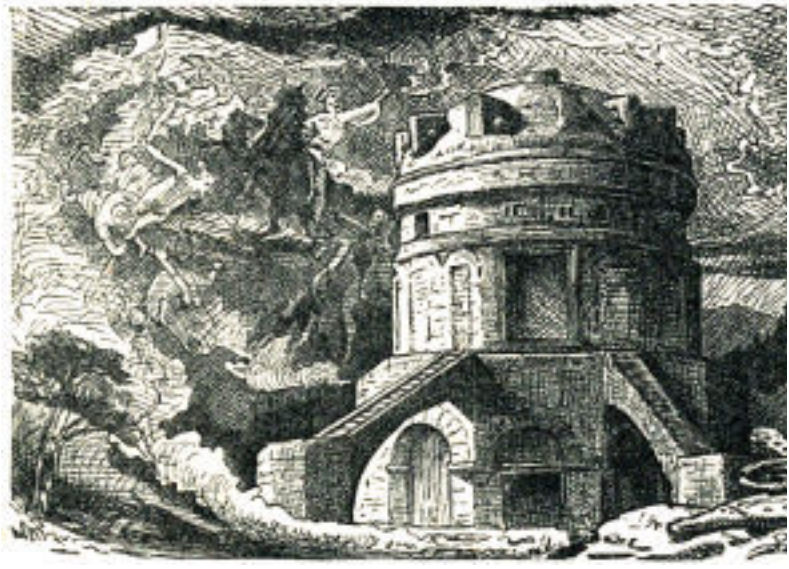
"Remember the Harlungs," was the only answer he receive

And so the victory was won. The hero of Bern marched t by the princes of the land of the Amelungs. They greeted h the imperial crown.

The Passing

Herrat was a faithful wife and helpmeet. The old master
the midst of his glory Dietrich could not forget the faithfu
given him their all, and to whom he could no longer show ei

His power was great. The empire was more extensive than
Once, indeed, a giant had committed great devastations wi
slain. Dietrich himself had then gone forth, and had conquer
ever took part.



ROUND THEODERIC'S TOMB.

His wife, noble Herrat, soon after fell sick and died. Fro
gloomy and morose, and committed many actions for whicl
pleasures that gave him any happiness was that of hunting.
clear up, and a smile play on his lips, and he would once mo
when he was bathing in the river, a great stag with golden
and passed into the wood close by. He sprang out of the v
Before the servants could bring him what he desired, Dietr
Seizing his sword and darts, he hastily mounted the noble a

the fleetest horses in his stables, but could not come up w
waited weeks, months, and even years for his return, but al
out in consequence. His subjects longed for his return, that
come. Wodan, his ancestor, had caught him up to himself, a
traveller has seen him rushing past, mounted on his coal-b
talk of him as Dietherbernet, and see him in the Furious Hos



PART S
THE NIBELUNG ANI

GUDRUN.

SIEGFRIED FIGHTING WITH ALBERICH.

THE NIBEL

SIEGFRIE

Netherlands called Siegfried (Sigfrît, Siegwart, or Sigurðr). I
the Wölfungs, who traced their lineage back to Wodan. H
rejoiced in the early signs of strength and activity displayed
heroic deeds might gain him glory and renown.

The boy, however, soon became aware of his wonderful
suffer no contradiction: he beat his playfellows black and l
were much bigger than he. The older he grew, the more h
parents became regarding his future.

At last Sigmund told the queen that he only knew of or
apprentice him to the smith, Mimer, who lived in the neighb
teach the boy how to forge the weapons he should one day
took the necessary steps.

When the smith heard the whole story, he declared hin
strong belief in the pacifying effects of hard work. Everythi
the prince grew almost to man's estate. But labour in the
right, he beat them, threw them down, and, on one occasio
—by the hair to his master's feet.

"This will not do at all," said Mimer; "come here and forg

Siegfried was quite ready to do so. He asked for the best i
took both hands to wield it. Mimer drew the strongest bar
Siegfried swung the hammer with one hand, as though it ha
blow was like a clap of thunder, the house shook to its fou
foot deep into the ground.

"This will never do," said the master as before; "we mu
suitable weapon! Go to the charcoal-burner in the pine woo
your strong shoulders. Meanwhile I shall prepare the best i
any warrior."

Siegfried was so pleased to hear this, that picking up the
beautiful spring day. The birds were singing, and the gras
bunch of the flowers, and stuck them in his leather cap, fro
good luck. He went on further and further, till he reached t
the gloomy silence was broken by a gurgling, hissing, and ro

soon found the reason of the noise. A dismal swamp lay bef
disporting themselves.

"I never saw so many horrible creatures in my life," said S

So saying, he picked up dead trees and threw them into
hastened on to the charcoal-burner's house. Arrived there,
monsters.

"Poor boy," said the charcoal-burner, "I am very sorry fo
will come out of his cave and make but a single mouthful
you, and told me that he had roused the worm against you, l

"Have no fear, good man," answered Siegfried; "I shall f
fire, that I may burn the poisonous brood."

The lad was soon back at the swamp. He set fire to the
wind was favourable, and fanned the flames to a great fire, s
The lad then went round the dismal swamp and found a sm
and found, on withdrawing it, that it was covered with a h
He therefore undressed, and bathed his whole body in the l
foot, except in one place, between his shoulders, where a lea
dressed himself again in his leather garments, and walked o
out upon him from its hiding-place; but three good blows of
take vengeance on the master smith and his comrade. At
master awaited the youth's arrival. At first Mimer tried the
to his sword. Siegfried then dealt him one mighty blow, and

Having done this, the lad went into the smithy, and with
he hardened in the blood of the lind-worm. Then he set ou
evil deed in slaying the master smith, who was so good a s
her turn, reproached him with many tears, for having stai
father's reproof, and softened by his mother's tears, did n
hiding his face in his hands, he said the sight of her tears cu
should be those of a gentle knight. Then the hearts of the pa

From that time forward Siegfried was changed. He listen
how to act wisely and well. Whenever he felt one of his ol
tears and his father's reproof, and conquered the evil spirit
were great respecting him: they were sure that in him their

and graceful, that the women admired him as much for his l

His father and mother were so proud of him, that they l with applause in every land.

The king at length deemed that the time was come to gi own and other lands, the sword and armour that marked a v importance, and took up the same place in a young man's l investiture was succeeded by feats of arms and trials of skill populace shouted: "Long live young Siegfried, our king; long

But he signed to them, and said, "I am not worthy of su entreat my noble father to allow me to go out into the world

When the warriors were all assembled at the feast in the the table beside his father, but modestly seated himself an Some of the party began to talk of distant Isenland, the king her wooers to do battle with her, thereby slaying many.

They talked of the land of the Nibelungs, learned in ma aspect, had taken up its abode.

Others, again, talked of the lovely princess at Worms on and by her uncle, strong Hagen.

"Oh, how pleasant it must be to see such marvels, and t father, he asked his permission to go out and see the world.

The king understood his desire, for he had had an advent mother gave her consent.

It was pain and grief to the queen to part with her son, bu out, dressed in a shining suit of armour, mounted on a swift spirits were high, and his heart full of hope, as is the case wi to seek his fortune.

He went northwards in the direction of Isenland. On rea skipper feared a storm, and only set sail at Siegfried's entre and went up to the palace.

Queen Brunhild received him in the great hall, where
determined to woo the lady by great feats of arms.

On the following day the warriors assembled in the lists,
armour, and looked as haughty and as beautiful as Freya, wh

Siegfried gazed at her in astonishment. She was so much t
who were armed equally with herself. He almost wished to
stone in sport, and flung it far beyond the lists; then, turn
returned again to his vessel, saying to himself:

"I could never love her, she is too like a man. That maide
the heart of a brave warrior so utterly that he would think n

After a quick voyage, he resumed his journey by land, no
desert lands, where wild beasts and robbers had their abode
giants and monsters. The minstrels sang of his great deeds
and wide.

When he reached the land of the Nibelungs, the kings of
divide between them the treasure left them by their fath
division. In payment for this service they offered him the g
was tempered in dragon's blood. The hero divided the tr
satisfied. They told him that they were sure he was keepin
twelve enormous giants to seize him, and confine him in th
once drew Balmung, and began slaying one giant after anot
up a thick mist; a storm arose, and the mountain trembled u
fell, and finally the two brothers were slain; then the mist cl

When the Nibelung people saw the wonders that had bee
difficulties were not at an end. An avenger had arisen: this
he came up against the bold warrior. He was now visible, no
helmet, or took it off. After a long struggle, Siegfried overthr

The dwarf was now in his power, but Siegfried could n
generosity that he swore to be true to his victor: an oath he
land of the Nibelungs. He was recognised as king by the wh
the hollow mountain, and of Alberich's cap of darkness by re

When Siegfried had reduced the whole kingdom to order,
he chose out twelve noble warriors to be his trusty compani

and gold with which to enrich his followers. The whole bar
yet mightier chieftain.

He and his men now set out on their journey homewards
king and queen were overjoyed to see their son, of whom t
Siegfried remained at home for many days to rest and rec
mother's feet, as when he was a little boy, and telling her o
her very happy. But when he stood before her in all the pan
hero for a son.

Pleasant as it was to be at home again, Siegfried could no
the battle of life, where alone a man preserves his strength
Worms, in the Rhineland, and try his fortune with the great

The king's face clouded when he heard this. "My son,"
warriors in the whole world. No hero has as yet withstood t
Gunther, with his brother Gernot. They all unite in guardin
wooed, only to lose his life."

"Ha! That is a good story!" cried bold Siegfried. "These
maid as well, if she be pleasing in my eyes. With my twelve

The king's remonstrances and the queen's entreaties we
undertaking this adventure.



II. SIEGFRIED

The lovely maiden Chriemhild, who lived in the land of Bu
Lady Ute. Her father had long been dead; but his three so
Child," regarded their beautiful sister as the costliest pearl

warriors, to whom fear was unknown. First among these w
but known and feared, both in the land of the Teuts and in t
that he was the uncle of the kings. After him came his bro
Gere and Eckewart; Rumolt, the chief cook; Volker of Alzey
the steward. These and many other brave men, too numerou

Young Chriemhild lived very much alone. She loved to w
all sights and sounds of war. Her brothers once persuaded h
horse's feet, and the sight so distressed her, that she went
again.

One day the queen entered her daughter's room at an ear
ailed her.

Chriemhild answered: "I dreamed that I had brought up a
let it fly up among the cliffs, two eagles attacked and killed i

"My child," said the mother gravely, "the falcon is some n
and the eagles are two false men, who will seek to compass
to turn their plans to nought!"

"Mother!" said Chriemhild, "do not speak to me of men.
there would be no more wars or bloodshed."

"Who knows?" answered her mother, laughing. "Women c
any man with his sword. But the time will come when you
chief admirer."

"Never," cried the maiden in a voice of horror. "Mother, y

Ute and Chriemhild went down to the garden. They ha
prancing in the court, and horns blowing. The queen wen
daughter of the arrival of some strange warriors in shining a
come and help her to receive the guests. But Chriemhil
Meanwhile Gunther and his brothers had heard of the comin
sent for, and he at once recognised Siegfried. He further a
honour, and to enter into friendly alliance with them.

Gunther resolved to follow Hagen's counsel; but Siegfri
whether the Burgundian warriors were as great in battle as
treasure as the prize of victory, and said that for his own pa

the number of his own party, if the kings of Burgundy wou
Burgundian heroes answered that it was not their habit to
horses. And King Gernot came forward and said,—

"Lord Siegfried, we want neither your goods nor your bl
become your friend and ally, if you will also be ours." So s
he replied:

"God be my witness that I will be your faithful friend a
honoured comrades."

The Nibelungs then followed their hosts into the banquet
new alliance.

Siegfried enjoyed his stay in the land of roses and vineyar
longing to see fair Chriemhild soon took possession of him,
sweetness, modesty, and gentleness—qualities that had ever

Chriemhild had also heard of him; but the only time she h
of a high window, when he was jousting in the court below.
and glory her forefathers had told many a tale. At that very
had seen her; but he had not. Chriemhild could not understa
had never before cared who came or went.

An embassy from Daneland and Saxonland arrived at W
Burgundy, if the kings of Burgundy did not at once pay them

The tribute was refused, and the Burgundian army was c
The armies met. The Danes and Saxons numbered forty th
fought bravely, but Siegfried's performances were perhaps
prisoner, and brought him sorely wounded into camp; hande
The fight raged on for hours. Grim Hagen was always in th
Siegfried fought by their side, always keeping the king of S
sword over his head. Then the Saxon king exclaimed,—

"Ha, Siegfried of the Netherlands, the devil has given me i

The battle was at an end, and the victors, covered with gl
They were received at Worms with great joy, and Siegfried'
victory, which was to take place some weeks later, so that t
Lüdeger and Lüdegast offered a large ransom for their liberty

proper to demand, Siegfried exclaimed:

"A king's head is neither to be bought nor ransomed fo through well-doing. Let the imprisoned kings go free, provid

When the days of feasting were over, the guests all took But Gunther, acting on Ortewin's advice, begged him to tarr Chriemhild, wished to show him their gratitude. The hero's case he would stay. When the king went to the women to tel heart a little fear lest his sister should refuse; but, though sh

At the time appointed, she entered the hall at Lady Ute's s a few words to him with her usual gentle courtesy, and his in the crowd noticed the look that had passed between then both. She contrived that the hero should sit next to her dau the garden, while the other warriors sat over their wine.





III. THE DR

Siegfried returned to his lodging that evening feeling happi out into the wood to hunt; but his thoughts were so full of back empty-handed in the afternoon, he found both town

shouting and crowding in every open place. Queen Ute w
fragments of conversation; but no one answered his questio
and asked him the meaning of the disturbance, and whether

"That it has," replied Hagen; "it could not be worse; but
'what the Norns have ordained must needs be best.' Hearke
were startled by hearing a rushing noise in the air, and the
devouring it. The thing of terror that approached was a flyi
all the realm of Helle. As it flew over our heads, we flung sp
moment we heard a cry, and saw that the monster had caug
bearing her off through the air so rapidly that both were soo

"And none of you went in pursuit!" shouted the Nibelung

"Are you mad?" asked Hagen, unmoved. "Are you a bird,

"I shall seek out the monster," said Siegfried quietly; "if
itself, I shall find the maiden, or—my death."

He hastened away, mounted his horse, and rode by unkn
across the Rhine, and then he wandered about among the l
length he reached a dark and trackless pine forest. The boug
his horse by the bridle. As night came on, he threw himself
will.

At midnight he heard the tramp of a horse's hoofs, and, l
little dwarf. On his head was a golden crown, the point of
dwarf to show him the way out of the forest, and the little
knew the forest better than he; adding, that he was the dw
brothers, and thousands more of their race.

"As for you," he continued, "I know that you are Siegfrie
going about the world with my cap of darkness on. You cou
would infallibly have found your grave at the Drachenstein
taken up their abode."

On hearing this, Siegfried shouted aloud for joy, and pro
hoard, if he would lead him to the Drachenstein. This Euge
threatened to slay him, and at the same time seized him by
obey. He replaced his crown, and rode on first through the d

"Knock at that door," said the little king. "It is there that
mine will serve you, for now we are entirely in the power of

Having thus spoken, he donned his cap of darkness, and v

Siegfried knocked at the door, at first gently, then louder
the keys of the Drachenstein. Suddenly the door sprang oper
thunderous voice what Siegfried meant by disturbing his m
the pole he had in his hands, which was taller than any of
Siegfried sprang aside to avoid the pole, and then the batt
trees and rocks came rattling down, but he never succeede
both hands, he brought it down on the ground with such t
stooped to draw it out, the hero sprang upon him and gave
into his dwelling, and slammed the door behind him. Siegfri
to force an opening with his good sword, and succeeded i
room, and saw the giant binding up his wounds, and then
when mirrored in the sea. In another minute Kuperan cam
Siegfried had the best of it, and the giant begged for his life
with the dragon, who could not be overcome without his a
bound up his wounds, and promised on his side to be his
giant hit him so hard a blow on his helmet that he fell sens
unseen, came up at the same moment and flung his cap o
vanished through enchantment, and felt about for him outsi
tearing off the cap of darkness, cut down the giant with the
go on before.

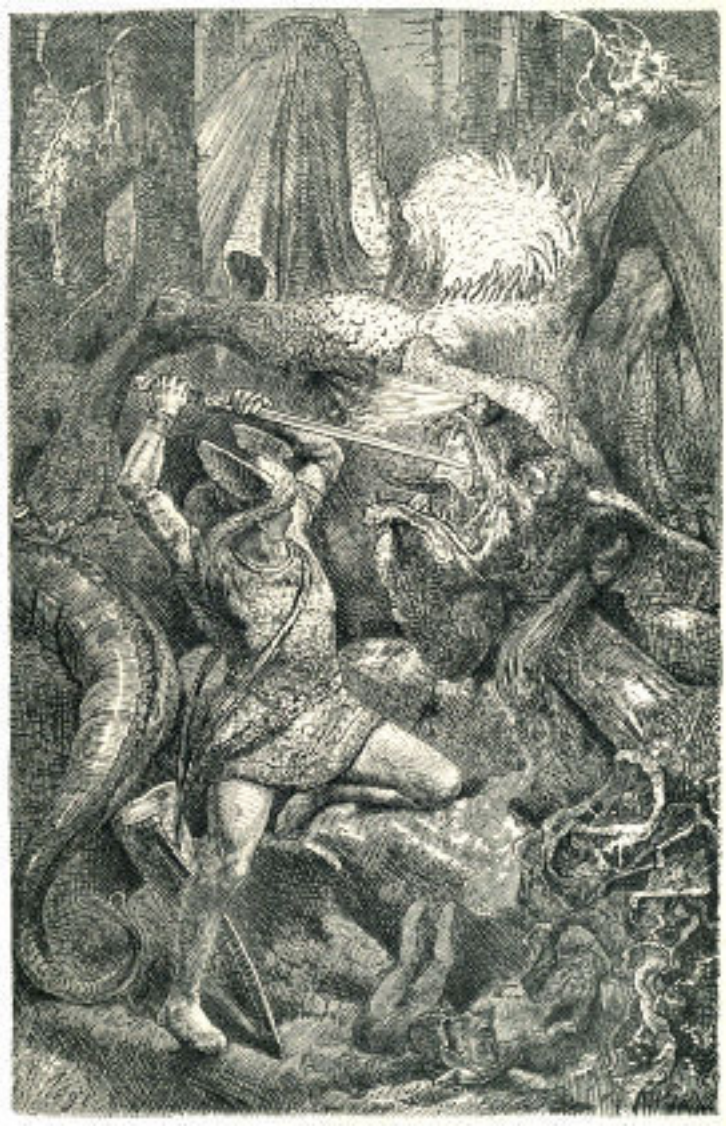
Faithless Kuperan again tried to murder the hero at the
again forgiven him if he had not needed his help to save t
door, and led the hero through many passages into a vault
Siegfried saw her whom he sought, looking pale and wan, b
even dared to clasp her in his arms; he felt that she returne
feel so strong that he could have fought all the powers of h
him to be gone before the dragon came back; but Siegfried
monster, hew him in pieces, and save the princess. The gian
so fashioned that it could cut through the scales of a dragon
Chriemhild. Siegfried saw the hilt of a sword on a ledge of
pick it up, and at the same moment the monster seized hi
which the bandages came off the giant's wounds, his blood

him into the depths below. A loud laugh of joy was heard heartily for having delivered the dwarfs from their cruel ta bearing food and wine to refresh the brave warrior after his a mouthful for two days. The dishes Chriemhild placed anything he had ever eaten or drunk before.

All at once a rushing sound was heard in the air, and a any crannies of the rock that they could find, and the hero security. Chriemhild entreated, prayed her lover to conceal monster approached like a storm-cloud, preceded by flames The mountain trembled, and the little dwarfs, hiding in Siegfried's request, Chriemhild withdrew into the vaulted ch shield with its claws, and tried to seize him in its great teeth breath that issued from the dragon's yawning jaws had cool left of the monster, taking care to avoid its claws.

All at once he felt himself encircled by the dragon's tail attack the creature in front, where it was undefended by curling tail that he could not free himself. In sore distress, hard a blow that the rocks trembled; but his object was atta of the cliff. A second blow, as hard as the first, divided the n he, with the last effort of his strength, flung the pieces ove stifled by the poisonous breath with which the dragon had Chriemhild's arms round him, and the dwarfs busily engage baneful effect of the fetid odours with which the place was i

The dwarfs now led the hero and the maiden into their While they rested, Eugel told them that the dragon had fo mighty enchantress, whom he had deserted, changed him i of his life, unless a pure maiden should consent to marry hin



SIEGFRIED'S COMBAT WITH THE DRAGON.

The dwarfs offered the warrior his choice of all their trea

horse beside Chriemhild, and, accompanied by Eugel, set ou
wild forest, the dwarf-king looked at him sadly, and said:

"You must know, bold warrior, that your life will be shor
But your fame will last through all ages, and your name wil
human race exists on the earth."

Eugel then took leave of him, and returned to his home ir
banks of the Rhine, the hero took the treasure that the dwar

"What is the use of gold to me?" he said. "My life is to be
gild thy waves and make them gleam more brightly in th
children of men; it sharpens the assassin's dagger to strike s
light of day. I will rejoice in my glory, and in my love for th

He then rejoined Chriemhild, and called the ferryman to t
to Worms, and were received there with great rejoicing.

Siegfried took the first opportunity when he found Gu
answered:

"I will give her to you with all my heart, if you will first
wife. I mean Brunhild, the proud queen of Isenland, for who

"I know her well," replied Siegfried, "and have seen how
do not fear but that she will find her masters in you and m
get back before the end of summer."

Queen Ute and her daughter feared the result of the ac
promised to stand by Gunther in life and death,—even th
antagonist as the monster of the Drachenstein. The king pr
dissuaded him; and when at last they started, the party of a
himself.





IV. THE WOOIN

After a favourable voyage they arrived at Isenstein, and roc their armour and horses. Hagen was at first unwilling to giv him that such was the law and custom at Isenstein. The wa her royal robes. She greeted her guests with courtesy, and t she had been told of his great deeds of valour; adding tha informed her that he had only come as the comrade of King well worthy of the high prize of victory.

"This is news to me!" said the queen, "I always thought yc

Then, turning to King Gunther, she told him that she ha warriors that bore him company. Gunther answered with what his companions were. Brunhild laughed, and asked wh

"No, I alone am to fight," answered the king; "I alone com

"Very well," said the lady, "the lists are open, prepare to d

The warriors were led into the castle court, where a wide

surrounded it, well armed. One of these proclaimed in a loud

"If any nobly-born warrior ventures to play the three-fo kingdom shall be his; but if he is conquered, his head and w

Four grooms now dragged a great stone into the lists, wh heavy as a millstone. Three other men brought in the huge b

"If the woman can play with such a thing as that," said Ha

"If we only had our weapons," cried Dankwart, "neither th

"Be of good courage, King Gunther," said Siegfried, "I w without any one seeing that I do so."

He hastened away whilst all eyes were fixed upon the que clad in full armour.

"Is it right, noble queen," said Hagen, "that your men shou

"Bring the warriors their armour," commanded Brunhild. must lose your lives here. If I conquer Gunther, as I have hi heads will fall under the axe of yonder man."

The heroes looked in the direction in which she pointed without the barrier holding a sharp axe in his hand.

The trial of strength began.

Brunhild went up to the stone, lifted it in both hands, a forward with one spring as light as a bird, making the p applause. Then came a silence as of death. Gunther advance in one hand, and flung it a full fathom farther than the quee and in the leap that followed, which carried him beyond the

In the first feat of strength, he was thus indisputably the c

Then Brunhild rose with flashing eyes, and seized the heav

"Now look to yourself, proud king," she cried, and flung t and would have laid him prostrate had not Siegfried come instead of the centre. Then tearing it out of the broken shie queen, and guiding Gunther's hand, Siegfried launched it armour rattling with the force of her fall.

The combat was at an end, the victory won. Brunhild ros
whoever could have read her heart would have seen it full
of Isenland were summoned to appear at Isenstein within t
begged the Burgundian warriors to remain her guests during
he stepped forward, and said that he had been busied about
not having been by while his master played so dangerous a

A great feast was made in the hall. Many ladies were pres
feelings were very mixed. He was ashamed not to have wo
gained his object. Hagen drained many a cup of wine, and
stern face. When the heroes of the Rhine were taken to th
weapons were at hand, because he feared the queen was
answered that he would at once set out for the land of the
made his way to the ship unperceived in the darkness, and s
the dwarf Alberich who guarded the treasure, and desired h
Isenland. His commands were obeyed in an incredibly short
third morning, he landed in front of the palace, to the grea
anxious, not knowing what the arrival of so large a force
Siegfried had brought over a band of his Nibelungs to do ho

During the next few days everything was arranged for the
took leave of her people and her mother's brother, who ha
seen. The queen herself was not happy, for she felt sure she
her lose time, being anxious to get back to Worms to celebra

When the travellers arrived in Burgundy, they were rec
Brunhild as a daughter, and Chriemhild kissed her, and pro
side by side: the one, grand, beautiful, and mysterious as a
morning. None looking at them could say which was the
Chriemhild's side till they reached the castle.

That evening, Gunther asked Siegfried and Chriemhild if
they were, announced that he would make preparations for

Brunhild sat at the feast that evening by Gunther's side
whispering between her mother and her lover.

"King of Burgundy," said Brunhild, at last, "I cannot unc
vassals. She ought to be the wife of a great king."

"Say not so," answered Gunther; "Siegfried is as much a l
of his father Sigmund, the whole Netherlands will belong to

"It is a strange story," she said; "he told me himself that h

"I will explain it all to you another time," replied Gunther

The double wedding took place next day. When the cere
her possessions, and gave up to her all authority in the hous

"Ah, mother Ute," said the young wife, "the Burgundians
wisdom and weak in action, otherwise King Gunther never w

Without waiting for an answer, she turned and left the roo

The feast was at an end, twilight had long fallen, and the
their private apartments. When he would have followed her

"This is no place for you; you can find a more fitting roon
lose my great strength."

At first he tried entreaties, then threats, and lastly forc
bound him hand and foot, and left him lying outside the doo

Next morning, before the household was stirring, the pro
peace, and to respect her will in future. Gunther was sad at
that was almost horror, and often left the feast to walk alone
him. When he heard the strange story, he cried:

"Be comforted, dear comrade; we have conquered this pr
again. I will follow you to-night, hidden under my cap of d
candles and let me take your place. Then she shall have an o

"Ah, good comrade," said Gunther, "I fear for your life. W
Rhine. She is a demon, as Hagen says, and has her marvellou

"Well," said Siegfried, "and even if a demon has taken up
of him. I shall be with you to-night in my cap of darkness."

The kings returned to the feast, Siegfried looking as cheer
and anxieties. At midnight Gunther led Brunhild to her roo
place. The wrestling began, Brunhild pushed him between th
She squeezed his hands till the blood spirted from under his
and a maid. He used all his hero-might, and pressed her in

moaning, she entreated him not to kill her, and she would l
slipped softly away, leaving Gunther alone with the queen.

The wedding festivities lasted eight days longer; then the g
gifts. Siegfried and his wife also made ready for their depart
his opinion, the Nibelung treasure was wealth enough.

It was on a beautiful day that the travellers reached the
meet them, and received them with great joy. An assembly c
from the throne, the old king and queen placed their cro
shouted, “Long live our young king and queen! May they rei

It seemed as if the people’s wish were to be realized, for y
Sigelinde had the great joy of holding a grandson in her ar
uncle in the distant Rhineland. And King Gunther, who hac
Not long after this the old queen was taken ill and died. This
peace in the realm, and along its borders.





V. TREASON

Eight years, or thereabouts, had come and gone, when

Chriemhild to a great feast. They accepted the invitation, an

Brunhild had said one day to her husband, “King Gunthe court like the other vassals? I should like to see both him presence at court.”

“I told you before,” answered Gunther, somewhat nettled, the Nibelungs and the Netherlands.”

“How strange!” she replied. “You cannot deny that he call

“Oh! he only said that to help me in my wooing,” said Gu

“You only say that,” was her answer, “to make your sis should very much like to see them both at our court.”

“Very well,” he answered kindly, “I will send messenge refuse to come.”

He went away, and did as he had said. Brunhild remained

“There he goes,” she muttered. “The man that conquered brave the battle like the Valkyrs of old. And he, what is he wind that blows? How much greater Siegfried is! He is a h none such could dare to raise his eyes to the queen of Isenl scorn him to this very hour.”

Siegfried and his party came to Worms at the appointed t Old Sigmund renewed his youth again, and delighted to ta child. The young queens were always together, at church, The only amusement to which Chriemhild did not accompan

One day when they were sitting together in the gallery wa said in the joy of her heart:

“Is not my Siegfried glorious among warriors, like a moon

“He is well deserving of your praise,” replied Brunhild, “b

“Of a truth,” answered Chriemhild, “my brother is a bold

“Why,” said Brunhild, “did not win he the prize at Isenstei

“Do you mean to accuse the Nibelung hero, the dragon-qu

“He cannot stand so high as the king of Burgundy,” answ

my husband."

"You lie, proud woman!" exclaimed Chriemhild, her fac would never have let me marry a man who was not free. Si yet for Netherland. The first kingdom he conquered with his may hold my head as high as you."

"Try it, chatterer! I shall always walk into church before y

With these words Brunhild left the gallery. Chriemhild befallen her, and she could not get over it. She went to her come out of the Nibelung treasure; then, followed by her lac already there with her train. She would have passed the prou

"Your husband is my husband's man, so wait here, and let

"Better for you had you held your peace," said Chriemhild

"Are you mad?" asked Brunhild. "What do you mean?"

"I will tell you what I mean," replied Chriemhild, "when I in to the house of God.

The proud queen stood still, weeping, at the entrance d scarcely wait till the end of the service. At length the door o

"Now," exclaimed Brunhild, "stop, and explain what you r

"Wife of a bondsman?" repeated Chriemhild, as though sl ring on my hand shaped like a serpent?"

"It is mine," said Brunhild. "Now I know who stole it from

"Well," continued Chriemhild, "maybe you also remembe and precious stones. My husband gained both the ring and tl

Chriemhild went her way with the air of a hero on the da where her sister-in-law had left her, her head bowed with s how she had been insulted. And Gunther promised to ask S received his brother-in-law in the royal hall, and in the pre chanced, and immediately the Nibelung hero declared, in all queen in the same breath; adding that too much weight sh then offered to clear himself by a solemn oath. But Gunther was as good as his bond.

"Hearken, then, ye men of Burgundy," said the hero; humiliations your queen has endured, and indeed I have al now, dear comrade Gunther, chide your wife as I shall chid again be brought to dispeace by their idle chatter."

He then turned and left the hall; but many a Burgundian f

Next day Brunhild began to make preparations for her de stay; but she sat silent and immovable as a stone figure.

"We cannot let you go," cried the king. "We will at any c demand?"

She rose, looked round the circle of warriors, and said in a

"Blood!"

The Burgundians started, and stared at each other, none d

"Not all the waters of the Rhine could wash the stain fro it."

The uneasiness of the warriors increased; but Hagen said:

"Are the bold Burgundians grown weak with age? Have queen demands the heart's-blood of Siegfried. Ha! The word

The Burgundians exchanged whispers about Siegfried's moreover, that he was innocent of all blame in the matter.

Then grim Hagen turned to Brunhild, and said, "Lady, Isenland; but, now that you are our queen, your honour shal

"But," exclaimed young Giselher, "it is not the way in Bu to us, and I, at least, will not be false to him."

Hagen tried to persuade Volker, the minstrel, to help him could attack openly. But Volker refused. Ortwin offered hi given the ring and girdle to his wife was an insult to the que

Gunther here broke in passionately, "Such a murder woul to prevent it."

"Lord of the Rhine," cried Brunhild, rising from her seat, Isenland, or have my revenge." With these words she left the

"No weapon can hurt him," said the Margrave Gere, "for l
place, on which a lime-leaf fell when he was doing it."

"If he guesses what we are after," added Sindolt, "he and l

"I will do it by cunning," said grim Hagen.

The king could not make up his mind one way or the
separated, nothing was settled. Three days later, when C
consented with a sigh to let his uncle Hagen try his plan.

About this time heralds came from Lüdegast and Lüdeger
to help his brothers-in-law to defend the country. The ladie
wear. One day when Chriemhild was thus employed, Hagen
hero having bathed in dragon's blood was invulnerable.

"Good friend," she answered sadly, "my Siegfried is so b
such a case, he might easily be wounded in his only vulneral

Hagen begged her to embroider a little cross upon his jerk
shield. She promised to do so, and immediately worked a lit
needless, for the next day fresh messengers came to say tha
now determined to be true to their old alliance. Soon after t
honour of the continued peace. On the morning on which it
at home. She had had such terrible dreams the night before,
her, saying that a bad dream would be a foolish reason for k

"Besides that, be comforted, dear wife. What harm can ha
all day long. I shall take Balmung and a sharp spear with me

He kissed her again, and hastened away. She ran to the w
morning passed very pleasantly, and then the warriors sat d
There was food in plenty, but the wine ran short. Hagen exp
it was there they should have dined; but he told his friends
run a race there with Siegfried. The latter laughingly accep
hunting-tackle, while Hagen went empty-handed, that the
meadow ground towards the linden, and, as they ran, the
trees beckoned him to go back, and the birds in the linden
the traitor is behind you." But Siegfried did not understanc
friend as himself.

“Here we are at last,” he cried to the panting Hagen. “He
under the cool shade of the linden, until the king comes up,

He laid aside his sword and other weapons, and threw him

“How dull you look,” he continued to Hagen, “and yet it i
sport this morning. Ah, here are the others. Come, Gunther,

Gunther stooped and drank of the fresh, clear water of the

“I intend to have a real good drink. But do not fear, noble
one part goes down into the earth, and another comes up int

“Very true,” said Hagen; “what matters one life more or le

The Nibelung hero bent over the well and drank thirstily,
into his back, in the exact spot where Chriemhild had embro
that the point of the weapon went through his back and car
not finding his sword where he had put it, for it had been re
the murderer to the ground. More he could not do. He sank
with his blood. The silver stream was also reddened, and
seemed as if nature were blushing for the evil deed that had

Once more the hero feebly raised his beautiful head, and s

“Ye murderous hounds, what harm did I ever do you? Had
devil from hell must have tempted you to do this foul deed.
fixed upon Hagen to do the cowardly deed. Your names will
And now, King Gunther, dishonoured as you are through t
man. Protect my wife, she is your own sister, protect my poo

These were the last words of the royal hero.

The warriors stood silently around him, their hearts filled

“We will tell the people, who all loved the dead man, that
us to blame.”

“Nay,” said Hagen, “that may not be. I will not deny wh
has now the expiation that she demanded, and your honour
ever Siegfried’s equal, or ever will be. What do I care for th
make a bier of branches, that the dead warrior may be born
day it shall do its old master a last service, and its new maste

When the bier was made, the hunting party set out for V
started in the morning. They did not arrive until late at ni
warriors and serving-men with terror. None of them would
and raising the body on his shoulders, carried it up, and lai
got up, and made ready to go to the sanctuary. She called
recognise in the half-light, lying in the passage, told his mist

"It is Siegfried! Hagen has murdered him at Brunhild's cor

The servants brought lights, and they saw that she had sp
her tears washed his face clear of the blood stains that ma
never, never again should she hear his voice;—never again.
would willingly have died with him, and have gone down t
in Freya's halls.

Old Sigmund, on hearing the news, uttered no word, b
though he hoped thereby to recall him to life. Suddenly he s

"Murder! Vengeance!" he cried. "Up, Nibelungs, up, and a

He hastened into the court, and the Nibelungs, hearing
received a sword and coat of mail from them, but his tremb
had sank unconscious on the ground. The Burgundians w
Hagen was bringing up new forces to help those already the

The Nibelungs retired, gnashing their teeth.

On the third day after this, the bier was taken to the san
the church, that they might give a last look at the dead her
the uncovered coffin, which was adorned with gold and pr
sorrow in her face and bearing. A veiled woman passed close

"Go, murderess," she cried, "do not approach him, lest the

The Unknown vanished in the crowd.

The Burgundian warriors now came to view the corpse, a
dead man opened, and his blood flowed forth in a warm stre

"Do not stand there, assassin," said Chriemhild; "do you n

The bold warrior remained where he was.

"I do not deny what my hand has done. I only acted as I w

If Chriemhild had had a sword in her hand, and had been sanctuary alive.

Many gifts were made to the poor in honour of the dead was richly decorated, and over it rose a high mound. Chrie lid was opened once more at her command. She kissed and had to bear her away, for she would have remained there ever, and said with his usual fatalism, “What has happene done.” The queen did not hear him. She did not even see h hide their grief and repentance. Her thoughts were all with t

Sigmund and the Nibelungs prepared to return home. The false Burgundians, but she would not leave her husband’s gr to take care of her little son, and bring him up to be like his motherless. She had only one wish, which she whispered i leave of none but the Lady Ute, who mourned for Siegfri youngest of the brothers. Then he set out for the Netherland

Time passed on, and it almost seemed as though Chrien brother. Grim Hagen alone seemed to fill her with horror, a that she wished the Nibelung treasure to be brought up to W proof of her renewed confidence in him, and at once con messengers without hesitation, and at length it arrived at whenever she found a brave warrior who possessed but fe necessary for his calling, and with daily pay besides. So th which grew daily larger, and more powerful.

Hagen warned the kings of this; he told them that the La own life, he said, but the fair land of Burgundy must not fal this consummation would be for the kings to take the Nib consent. Gernot said that enough harm had been done to Once, when his liege lords were absent, Hagen, who had al his men together, and fell upon the warders who had charg it, and sank it in the deep waters of the Rhine. It was of littl of little use that Chriemhild made indignant complaint: the

“If you were not our uncle,” said Gunther and Gernot, “thi

A short time afterwards, Hagen showed his nephews the p them swear that none of them would betray its hiding-pla

sorrowful as before; she always sat with her mother, and em
death, and showed how he was cruelly slain by his brother I
husband's bier. But in Baldur every one recognised the feat
features, garments, and murderous weapon of grim Hagen.
watching the picture thoughtfully. When the Lady Ute as
child?" she would answer, "I was thinking of Hagen."

HAGEN THROWS THE PRIEST OVERBOARD.

THE NIBEL

KING ETZE

of Bechelaren, surnamed “the Good,” came with some of
Hagen were old acquaintances of his, and he had often held
the house of mourning, his gentle, noble spirit had such an e
mother to the hall, and listen to the Margrave with a gentle
death. But if Brunhild or Hagen entered, she would go away

Days and weeks passed on, and at last Gunther said to his

the pleasure of renewing an old acquaintance, but had some

"Well, King Gunther, I will tell you what brings me here. my liege lord King Etzel, died some years ago, and that her long sat lonely in the wide halls of Etzelburg, but he has nc subject, and I advised him to try and win the hand of the Siegfried. If you will give your consent to the match, I am er

"She is no longer under my charge," was the answer; "she that she will not be willing to marry again."

"I will take her the good news," said Giselher, "and mothe

The young warrior immediately rose, and went to the wo embroidery. He told her that it was time she should give u that she was still young, and might yet be happy. Then he t and its glory, and finally told her of Etzel's wooing. But Ch leave the grave-mound in which all she loved was buried.

Then mother Ute spoke. "If you will be Etzel's queen, my

"Most powerful of women," repeated the daughter th embroidery, "you know whom that hero is intended to repre

He shook his head, and she added, "It is Wali, the Avenge dark Höder to his own place."

"These are old wives' stories that are forgotten now," a Rüdiger is come to woo you."

"Yes—but what if it were to be fulfilled?" she said, "per wooing myself."

Giselher left the room, and the Lady Ute went out also, lea

"Siegfried," said the young queen, "it is for your sake th come to me, in waking and in sleep, and pointed to your w until it is granted me to send grim Höder down to dark Hell

Rüdiger appeared, and in courteous fashion wooed the qu name of the god Irmin, that she should have men to fight h land of the wild Huns, and to become Etzel's wife.

The Burgundians all rejoiced when Rüdiger told them the

thought, their sister would again be happy. But Hagen came

"What are you thinking of, that you thus call the lightning Huns. Between the widow of Siegfried and us, such friendsh the one be quenched, or the other fly off in steam. It is a c one's head."

But the brothers refused to listen to his warnings. Pre Ambassadors were sent to the Nibelungs and to the Netherl returned with a numerous company of warriors and servant far as the Danube, where they took leave of her, and Margr At the borders of the land, King Etzel with a large following when he saw the pale, beautiful countenance of the Lady Ch treasures and his lands,—that, in short, she should be his q wife, but that her love was buried with Siegfried. The king her love through kindness and affection. And so they wer fortnight, and were celebrated in the usual way.

Chriemhild took little part in the rejoicings. She did al amongst the warriors present, there was one who was fame were far away in the beautiful land of the Amelungs, which He longed to return to his own people, and win the victor Sometimes, as he sat grave and sad in the great hall, while him, and tell him of Hagen's foul deed. He understood that neither could nor would raise his sword against the Burgun time.

Months and years passed on; a little boy was born to the name of Ortlieb. The king and country rejoiced equally in th his wife more than he had ever done before, and would l nothing; she remained grave, quiet, thoughtful about her du she tended him, did not bring her happiness. She was never death had dealt her would not heal. The spirit of vengeance "Blood for blood, murder for murder," and her ears were op





II. THE BURGUNDIA

The Jo

One day when the king was playing with little Ortlieb, and
child should one day be a hero like Siegfried. She nearly
quiet, begged her husband to invite her brothers and their
first request that she had ever made, and so King Etzel was
and Wörbeling, with four and twenty noble warriors, to i
Chriemhild sent a special message to her mother, begging
kings accepted Etzel's invitation.

Hagen prepared for the journey as though they were setti
have liked to go, but her age and infirmities hindered her t
she had no desire to see her enemy's good fortune; besides,
spend her time near Siegfried's grave-mound.

"The Nibelungs are going to visit the Huns," said the com
Rhine; for, ever since the treasure had come into the coun
after the unknown land.

The travellers rode for twelve days through the Black Fo
the borders of Bavaria neither inn nor ferryman was to be
night, Hagen went deeper into the inhospitable land, and ca
women bathing in the clear water, and at once knew that th
got possession of their feather garments, which obliged them

"Give us back our garments," said one of them, "and I will

He promised to do as she desired, if she would tell him
things to him, and the hero gave back all the swan-garmen
informed him that her sister had spoken words of guile, for
alone of all that numerous company should ever see the Rhi
if they did not at once return home. Hagen answered that h
how to cross the river. The swan-maidens directed him when

Hagen followed the advice given him, and brought his con
enemy, so after a hand-to-hand encounter, he was slain, an
river, Hagen flung the priest, who accompanied them, overb
might come to nought. But he had miscalculated in this
turbulent waters, and the current drove him back to the shor

"The holy man has the devil's own luck," said the grim
Norns used to say."

The travellers pursued their journey rather more rapidly
they arrived at Margrave Rüdiger's castle, where they met
During their visit to Bechelaren, Giselher fell in love with fa
through his brother. So, according to old custom, the you
company in the great hall of the castle, and say whether th
for a moment. His "yes" was loud and clear. But fair Dietel
only obtained in response to a second demand. Then Giselh
The bond was therefore sealed for life.

The Burgundians, or Nibelungs as they were generally ca
went away, their host pressed all manner of costly gifts u
ornament, and only begged for a strong shield that hung on

"It is Nudung's shield, and he, our only son, was slain by
and may it guard you well."

The travellers continued their journey, and arrived at the

Dietrich and many other warriors. Accompanied by these, a
came down to meet them in the castle court. She greeted th
the warriors who accompanied them. Hagen was angry, and

"When one comes as an invited guest, one is accustomed
custom does not seem to obtain in the land of the Huns."

"Lord Hagen of Tronje," said Chriemhild, "have you done
me some of the stolen Nibelung treasure?"

"It lies deep sunk in the Rhine," replied the warrior, "and
you desired a gift, I am rich enough to have brought you one

"I can do without it," said the queen, "I too am rich; I only
own again."

"I find my shield, helmet, sharp sword, and coat of ma
promise to try and bring you the devil. *He* has much rich tre

"I do not need your gifts," cried the queen, "nor do I desir
murderous and thievish hand. I have not yet requited you fo

She turned away in anger, and calling her men-at-arms
death.

The queen then asked her brothers to divest themselves
panoply of war before King Etzel. Hagen at once advised th
terms.

Chriemhild exclaimed, that she would give much to kn
Amelung hero came forward, and boldly avowed that it was
plots that were being contrived in the palace. The queen onl
apartments.

While the kings talked together in the friendliest fashio
Hagen, desirous of showing that he felt no fear, asked one o
coming of the queen. His familiar friend, Volker the minstre
near the queen's hall. As they sat there—Hagen with his g
down the steps, and asked him why he had hated her so, and

"Well," he said, "I never denied that I did it. The queen
dishonoured. The shame had to be washed out with blood,
had to be slain by cunning. Any one may blame me, any one

of darkness, and am easily to be found."

Then Chriemhild turned to her serving-men, and desired
murderer of Siegfried. But the two brave men were so ter
although the queen offered them much gold. They then
blushing with shame.

A message now came from King Etzel begging the Burgur
and he greeted them like old friends. After having welcome
who the two warriors were that looked so brave, and stood s

"They are Volker the minstrel, and my uncle Hagen of Tro

"What, Hagen!" cried Etzel. "So we have met again at las
belied the promise of your youth. But you are much chang
was proud of your brave deeds in my service, and set you
your hair is mixed with grey, and your face has grown so
swing your broadsword."

"Who can tell," replied the hero, "how soon I may have to

"Never in the land of the Huns," answered the king; "you,

The evening passed quietly, and it was nearly midnigh
couches were spread for them with down cushions covered
be well to keep watch during the night for fear of surprise,
get them at a moment's notice.

Hagen and Volker kept guard. They had been seated for s
and shields glancing in the starlight. He pointed them out t
and needed no telling to inform him on what errand they v
Hagen prevented him, because some of the enemy might
sleeping friends. So peace was preserved for the time; and a
solemn Midsummer festival. King Etzel appeared with his tr
But they answered that such was their custom, not thinking

After the service was over, a great repast was served, whi
entertainments. In all feats of arms and trials of skill in the
Huns. At length the games appeared to be over, and the war
the scene of contest, a prince of the Huns presented hims
strangers, who, he alleged, had hitherto only measured thei

Bold Volker caught his spear more firmly in his hand, and tu
wounded the Hun severely, and a cry of "Murder, down wit
begun in another minute, had not King Etzel thrown himsel
people who hurt one of his guests. Peace was then outward
showed the angry turmoil in every heart.

That evening, Etzel sent for his little son into the hall, tha
the handsome, frank-mannered child, and told the father th
live to grow up, he looked so delicate.

This speech of Hagen's increased the bad feeling of the H
thoughts. A little later, a great noise was heard in the court

The First Blood. Blö

Before the warriors went to the feast that evening, Quee
promised him Etzel's help in regaining his kingdom, if he w
But he told her that he could not, for the Burgundian warric
her, that they had come to Etzelburg in all good faith an
hopeless, Blödelin, Etzel's brother, came in, and told the que
Seeing how hot his anger was, Chriemhild thought she m
therefore told him of the unavenged death of Siegfried, and
her will. But he refused, from fear of Etzel's anger. Upon w
with lands and towers, and the hand of a beautiful maiden
These promises gained him to her will. He told her that he
side, and if Hagen came to try and settle matters, he would h

Chriemhild then retired to her chamber, which was perva
rays of the sun. As she sat there thinking, the words that he
often strike deeper wounds and shed more blood with their
up, and recalled Blödelin; but at the same moment she saw,
the dead warrior stretched upon it. She saw him raise hir
forward to meet him, there was nothing but empty air. Sl
vengeance brought about the death of her little son, and o
kingdom, she did not care. She could die, and die willingly,

Meantime, Blödelin was making his preparations. His r
followed him joyously to the hall, where Dankwart the Ma

hero rose from his seat to greet the prince, who exclaimed:

"Prepare to die. The queen demands a bloody atonement f

"But why should I have to expiate a murder of which I kn

"That cannot be helped," said the Hun; "my men's swords

"Then I am sorry that I gave you words of peace. I shall n

With that he drew his sword, and swung it so lustily at the

Wild shrieks and shouts of vengeance arose, and all pr Dankwart made his way fighting to the hall, his armour b slain to a man.

"Up, brother Hagen!" he cried, "save me from the faithle order to avenge Siegfried's death. I slew him, but the serva toils that the Huns have laid for us."

THE SL

The fight recommenced in the banqueting hall, in spite of the struggle the little Prince Ortlieb, the sole hope of Etzel succeeded in locking and bolting the doors of the hall.

Etzel and the queen sat full of anxious care during the *n* fight, were also grave and sad. At length the hero of Bern ex

"Listen to me, Nibelungs. Hearken to my words, ye frie Margrave Rüdiger may go away unharmed."

King Gunther recognised Dietrich's voice, and said: "If an Bern, I shall take your cause into my own hands."

"No one has done me harm," replied the warrior; "all that

"What is the good of so much requesting?" cried hot-hea even if a thousand such as these Nibelungs tried to keep the

"Hush! hush! foolish comrade," said Dietrich; "there was b

King Gunther then commanded his people to open the do through their ranks with Chriemhild leaning on one arm a

warriors. After them came Rüdiger with four hundred men.

"Greet your daughter from me, and say to her that I shall

Many of the Huns tried to escape with King Etzel, but Voll

No sooner were Dietrich and Rüdiger safely gone than th no rest, until all the Huns were lying dead or dying on the fl but Hagen speedily called them to be up and doing, and renewed attack. He was at once obeyed. The dead and woun

Volker and Hagen now guarded the entrance, lest the ener

While Etzel wrung his hands, and moaned over the slaugh full of gold and jewels to whoever slew her deadly foe, Ha and said that he would try and do her will. And he was Cour

He went forward boldly and performed prodigies of v Chriemhild's window.

Haward and Irnfried of Düringen (Thuringia) determined the attack. The fight began at the door, where Irnfried f Haward was slain by the hero of Tronje. But still the men exclaimed,—

"Give place. Let them go through the door, out of whicl slumber-song to which our swords can beat the accompanim

So the Nibelungs opened their ranks, and the men of Dan the battle began. Many a brave Burgundian fell to rise no m

The Parley

Silence fell on the palace. The Nibelung warriors laid do rest from their labours, while Hagen and Volker kept watch to make peace. They reminded King Etzel that they had co faith, only to meet with treachery from him and his. But E their feudal superior. Then Giselher turned to his sister and in such a way. And even the women, who were weeping for been spent in doing good to others. Chriemhild was touch should go free with all their warriors and men-at-arms if

punish him as he deserved. But with one voice the Nibelungs

Enraged at the boldness of her foes, the queen called upo the house. Again the bitter strife began. Chriemhild knew no the upper part of the house, which was built of wood, an which at length fell with a crash. A wild wail of human cre queen retired to her own apartments, and standing at the friends must have been burnt, thought sadly and half remo heart as full of hatred to Hagen as it ever had been.

Meanwhile the Nibelungs had not perished in the flame which they had entrenched themselves was too strongly bu storey; though the Burgundians were for a long time as if s with their lives; and Hagen made them slake their intolerabl

When the Huns at length came to look for their charre confronted by six hundred brave and utterly undaunted war

SLAUGHTER AGAIN.—TH

The queen heard with astonishment that the Nibelungs w what it were best to do, one of the Hunnish notables told Bechelaren, who had received so many benefits from the ki so long as a fugitive. Chriemhild thought the advice good, a

The noble Margrave immediately obeyed the queen's sum reminding him of all the honours that had been heaped upo must punish the Nibelungs for the great scath they had wrou

"My liege," said the good old hero sadly, "all that you ha dangerous, but do not ask that I should break the faith I sw led them to Etzelburg at your command. They trusted me u and to share the Burgundian throne. Methinks it were an ill

When the king reminded him of his oath of allegiance, he

"Take back my castles and towns, the wealth that you ha go penniless into the wide world with my wife and child, an

"Nay, noble Margrave, but you cannot do so," replied the came to Burgundy to woo me for Etzel. I feared to go alo

helper, and you swore to me with a solemn oath that you w
Your sworn faith to me is older than that which you prom
dishonoured."

Rüdiger stood in silent thought before the queen. At lengtl

"Take my head. I shall not even tremble when the execut
conscience disallows."

The conversation lasted a good while longer. At length
queen.

The Nibelungs stood by the window looking out for h
Giselher exclaimed joyfully that all was not lost, that they sh
close to the door he explained his errand. Gunther reminded
sadly that the oath he had sworn to Etzel's wife forced hin
other, as noble friends forced to fight against their will. Onc
the great hall. The heat of battle raged anew in every heart,
and Gernot. At length the men of Bechelaren were conquere
fell before this victory was gained.

The heroes were silent in the wide hall. They heard the
raised in indignation, as she accused the Margrave Rüdi
Nibelungs. Volker's anger was roused at this unjust suspicion
that score, nor accuse a good man falsely, for the hero o
Margrave's body to be shown at the window, so that the k
loud cry of horror, and cursed the hand that had done the
band of avengers, but he forebore to unsheath it when he
threshold.

Chriemhild stood looking on with folded arms. She was l
She shed a few tears for the loss of her old friend Rüdiger.
may likewise have pondered whether by any means she mi
were unexpected by her as by every one else.

DIETRICH AND

One of Dietrich's men heard what had happened. He ha
refused to believe it, and sent Helfrich to the palace to
confirmed, the hero of Bern sent his old master Hildebrand t

The master would have gone unarmed upon this errand, b
the presence of wolves. The master thought the advice good,
all Dietrich's men were following him well-armed, under W
go back, but the latter refused point-blank, saying that he co
all, declined to leave him. When the small band of five hunc
defending, Master Hildebrand lowered his shield, and asked
answered that they wished it were untrue, but it could no
Amelungs mourned aloud for their friend. Wolfhart would l
threatening him with Dietrich's anger if he thrust himself in
in the name of the hero of Bern that the Margrave's body
honourable burial. King Gunther replied that it was a goo
gratified. Wolfhart called to them to make haste and bring c
to do more work, so the Amelungs might come in and fetch i

One word led to another, till Wolfhart lost his temper
shouting as with one voice their ancient war-cry. Master
foremost place when the battle began. The tired Nibelungs,
by side in the great battle of Ravenna, and on many other f
death. Here was strong Sigestap, duke of Bern, there brave
Ritschart, and others, all burning to avenge the death of Rüc
to meet could not find each other. Thus Volker and Wolfha
slain many of the Burgundians, and gave him his death-bl
under his hand. Dankwart was slain by Helfrich; Wolfhart d
tremendous struggle, the young king thrust him through the
sword in both hands, and slew his adversary.

Old Hildebrand saw his nephew fall, and hastened to hir
hall of doom; but he was too heavy. The wounded hero oper

"Uncle, tell our friends not to weep for me, for I have met
wild blood has grown calm and still, and I am ready to sleep

These were the last words of the wildest, hottest warrior i
hero of Bern, save Hildebrand alone, lay stretched on the bl
and King Gunther.

"Come now, Master Hildebrand," cried a rough voice, "yo

It was Hagen that spoke. The meafdtelsmer defend his br
Balmung was sharp. One terrible blow cut through Hildebra

When the old man felt the wound, and looked in the grim
his long life fear took possession of him, and covering his ba

With shattered armour, and red with his own blood, and
asked whether he had fought with the Nibelungs, and wh
Burgundians had slain the good Rüdiger, and had declined t

The hero of Bern was so saddened by these tidings, tha
command his comrades to arm themselves at once.

“Whom shall I command?” asked the master.

“The swordsmen of Bern are all here. You, my lord, and I,
King Gunther are the only ones alive.”

At first Dietrich did not understand, and when he did, he r

“How could my brave men have fallen under the swords
land of the Amelungs?”

So he cried in his sore distress. But soon, mastering his
accompanied by the master, went full-armed to the house
courage.

Hagen and Hildebrand exchanged so many scornful word
women, and demanded that the combat should at once begi
as ever it had been, and the hero of Bern had much trouble
weary, and less nimble than of yore. Dietrich, seeing this, m
him fast. Then he bore his prisoner into the presence of Ch
was the boldest and bravest warrior in the whole world.
doughty deed, and did not mark the gleam in her eyes, nor
away to the last battle with King Gunther.

Chriemhild had gained her end: that end to which she ha
her eyes; but he never flinched: he would not give her that
confess where he had hidden the Nibelung treasure. She sp
he would only tell her the hiding-place. The hero seemed to
her, but that he had sworn to keep the secret as long as one

She promised him again that she would keep her word, i
and ward.

"Lies, lies, all lies," he said to himself, as his gaolers led hi

The hero of Bern soon afterwards appeared with King Gu dungeon Chriemhild considered what was now to be done. who had done the deed, and the king who had condoned it.

She felt a few qualms of conscience when she thought tha and calmly pursued the path she had marked out for herse Hagen's feet to convince him that now the last king of Burgu

The hero thrust away the head contemptuously. "It was crown I strove to keep free from stain. The royal house overthrown. Of what worth to me is the span of life that rem

That night Chriemhild had a happy dream. She thought th stretched out his arms to her in love and gratitude, and then

Next morning Chriemhild seated herself beside King Etz before her, a prisoner, and in bonds. She questioned him ag answered with all his former boldness:

"You are mistaken, woman, if you think that you have m kings are all dead now, Gunther, Gernot, Giselher; now none waters of the Rhine, and from me you shall never learn whe

Chriemhild silently came down from the throne, and p armour.

"You took good care of the gold you stole from me," she this moment. My noble husband Siegfried wore this sword w I will now try whether it be strong enough to avenge its mas

She had drawn the sword from its sheath, and now swung from the body, and fell at the feet of old Hildebrand.

A cry of horror echoed through the hall, then all was sti and said,—

"This blood may never be washed from the blade. Balm grave. Perhaps he may then learn that his wife loved him f up my life: Love and Revenge. My work is done."

"Strange," said Hildebrand, staring at the hero's dissevere

been slain by a woman! But although he wronged me much

So saying, the old master drew his sword, and gave the qu
his knees beside his wife. She was deadly pale, and had only

“Let none touch the old master for this,” she said, and they





III. THE NIBEL

At Etz

Great as was the misfortune that had come upon the people to as speedily as possible. King Etzel was too full of his c Hildebrand gave all necessary orders, and themselves helped

All the dead were buried with every honour, save and exc were filled and closed, before the old master remembere audience-hall. Hildebrand ordered that he should receive i there he was laid with all his armour, except the good s according to Chriemhild's wish. Many of the Huns went witl the dead man whose strong right hand had brought so muc the other grave-mounds, while on Hagen's thistles and thor adder had found its home. All who had gone near enough to one eye like the hero of Tronje, and were firmly convinced t



ETZEL BESIDE CHRIEMHILD'S BIER.

AT BEC

Dietrich and Hildebrand sent news to Bechelaren and to V
Swemmeling as their ambassador, for they knew that he
possible.

The Margravine and her daughter sat by an open windc
strangely anxious, a presentiment of evil overpowered her, a

She said that she feared evil news was coming, for she ha
to her, surrounded by the Burgundians, and many other war
she wished all these heroes to go with her. She took your fa
following. I wished to join the procession, but she signed tc

which a hill seemed to rise like——"

She was interrupted by sounds of arrival. It was the p
guidance. The Margravine recognised Rüdiger's horse and a
the midst of all her grief, she tried to keep up, that she migh

The minstrel joined the ladies. The Margravine rose to me
knew what had happened. A few moments later, they were
him how the noble Rüdiger had met with his death. He took
faith, and had conquered in the battle of life. He told how tl
over earth and sea, and how they speak to their friends in
thus bring them comfort in their sorrow.

After that he gave them all the details of what had occu
continue his journey. A few weeks after his departure, the
remained alone for a long time, but when Dietrich recon
Bechelaren, and brought her to his wife, the noble Herrat, a
afterwards married.

Swemmeling made his way to Worms as rapidly as he cou

AT W

Meanwhile things were going on very quietly at Worms.
many a weird ditty, but seldom speaking. Queen Brunhild w
she copied from old patterns. Curiously enough, the white g

"Look, mother Ute," she said. "Is it not strange that, in sp
looked that day when he rode out hunting for the last time.
to hear in my childhood, in Isenland, in which a murder was
to me that when Hagen comes back, I must get him to giv
dead hero. Otherwise I fear that Burgundy will suffer as Isen

"Neither Hagen nor any of the others will ever return
unexpiated," said mother Ute; and, breaking off, she beg
gruesome that none could listen to it without a shiver. Abo
journey to the land of the Huns, of the friendly reception th
quarrel, the battle, and its fatal results. No plaints, no we
came to an end, the Lady Ute said:

"It is a sad tale, very, very sad, but it could not have bee
the curse of murder from this house."

Neither did Brunhild weep. She made all necessary arran
sword Balmung should be given to her, and, looking at the b

"Grim Hagen stole this weapon out of Siegfried's grave. I
the blood of his murderer, that he may rest in peace."

She went to the grave-mound with the sword, and did no
they found her lying dead beside Siegfried's coffin, on which

The Lady Ute went on spinning for many a day, and as sh
her own brood.

The Burgundian nobles, and all the people, mourned for t
the kingdom, they united, and raised the young son of Gunt
guardians for the king so long as he remained a child.



THE HEGEL

HA

Zealc
country's honour before Sigeband their king, when he held
Sweetly the minstrels sang the praise of warlike deeds; and
the spear and shooting with the bow. But evermore did littl
the heart of his mother, the Lady Ute, was pleased.

One day the boys were amusing themselves by throwin
forward to get their weapons again, the prince among the re
target first, and was busy pulling out his spear, when an old
for danger was approaching. He pointed up at the sky, cryin

The Lady Ute looked, and saw a dark spot in the sky. It s
swiftness of an arrow, and the nearer it came the bigger it g
sound resembled the rushing of the storm. The other boys fl
spear with all his childish strength at the great bird. The we
it swooped down upon the child and bore him off in its talon

So the feasting and mirth that had reigned at Castle Balia
gone. There was no hope of rescue; for though many a hero
swift that no one could see where it was gone. Years passed

The griffin carried Hagen over land and sea to its nest, w
boy to its young ones to eat, and then flew away in sear
prepared to devour him, but he made ready for his defence
birds by the throat striving to throttle them. At length one o
carried him to the branch of a tree, that it might enjoy th
united weight; it bent, broke, and the monster fell with th
away, and Hagen crept deeper into the thicket, unheeding
down utterly exhausted. When he came to his senses, he saw
looking at him in astonishment. He raised himself on his
distance, and no wonder, his appearance was so frightful.
about him in rags. He limped and crept as well as he could
cave with two companions. They all shrieked when they s
merman, who had followed them to devour them; but when
by the griffin, and had only escaped from the monster as by
with him.

After that they told him their story, which was much the
called Hilde, and that she was an Indian princess; the second
The maidens nursed their young companion with such care
he went out to provide the needful food, and ventured dee
himself a bow and arrows, the latter of which he tipped with
children had no fire, they were obliged to eat their food ra
when Hagen was twelve years old he was almost a man in si

Meanwhile the young griffins were grown up, and were a
could no longer wander about as freely and fearlessly as bef
and crept under an overhanging rock which hid him from
which now looked dark as night, and again was lighted up
clouds. He listened fearlessly to the loud peals of thunder,
dashing against the rocks. But suddenly he caught sight of a
heart was filled with hope and fear; of hope, because thoug
fear, because the boat seemed too weak to live on such a s
shriek of agony, and ship and crew were swallowed in the
with its soft light to calm the fury of the winds. On the stra
luckless mariners. Hagen was going to sally out in hopes of
the whirr of griffins' wings, and knew that the great birds ha
monsters were busied with their meal, the boy crept out o
found drift-wood, and a drowned man in full armour, with
could have shouted aloud for joy, for now he had arms, such
coat of mail, covered his head with the helmet, girded the
was high time, for at this moment one of the griffins swoope
the arrow struck his enemy in the breast, bringing it down w
shared its fate, and now the three other birds attacked him
heads of the dead monsters to his friends in the cave, who h
joy when they found that the griffins were dead. They accor
to throw the great birds into the sea, and then, true to pious
warrior whose weapons had helped Hagen to victory. Vainl
found a well-preserved box with flint and steel, which ena
well-dressed meal, which after their former privations seeme

Hagen went out hunting much more frequently than bef
Once, however, he met with a curious creature. It was cover
horrible grinders gleamed in its blood-red jaws.

He aimed a sharp arrow at its back; but the point glanced
A second arrow was likewise without effect. Hagen now d
escaped the terrible claws by his marvellous agility. When h
his opportunity, and plunged his weapon into the great
heaving body of the creature. He longed for a few drops of
drank of the blood that streamed from the monster's wounds
an unaccustomed sense of power took possession of him. He

He would not have hesitated to fight all the griffins and gia
stroke. In like manner he killed two panthers, and a rhinoce
so ferocious carrying the bear on his shoulders, that he
accustomed manner when he had seen the gentle Hilde.

Many years came and went. Hagen and his three friends l
wild beasts. Although they were very happy together, they l
looks over the sea in hopes of seeing some ship approach. A
on the shore, a white sail appeared on the horizon, and can
Hagen, who joined them fully armed. Their signals were
approached the shore. The helmsman uttered a cry of asto
were human beings or water-sprites.

"We are poor unfortunate people," said Hagen; "take us w

So the sailors took them to the ship, and they were soo
Hagen, in answer to his questions, told their whole story.
Balian, the captain exclaimed:

"What! you can kill griffins like flies! Still you are a luck
father has done so much injury. You shall now be hostage
young fellow in chains, and steer for Garadin."

Scarcely had the Count said these words when Hagen fe
laid hold of him, into the sea: then, drawing his sword, he r
upon his arm. He turned round furiously; but at the sight o
spoke gentle words of conciliation, and Hagen listened. The
between him and the King, if he would at once steer for
Favourable winds swelled the sails, and ten days later the v
did not at first recognise Hagen; but great was their rejoici
with the Count of Garadie, and the three maidens were recei

Hagen did not long remain quietly at home in his father's
both name and fame.

Time passed on, and Hagen, who was known far and wid
father's place. When urged by his mother to choose a wife,
fair Hilde, the sweet companion of his childhood, and soon a

Queen Ute lived to hold a grandchild in her arms, who v
Sigeband died, leaving their son to rule alone.

The Princess Hilde grew up beautiful, and many wooers would receive no man as a son-in-law without first fighting one that was not stronger than himself. Whoever ventured the terror of kings, became also the terror of wooers, and be





II. HETTEL THE HEGE

Now about this time King Hettel the Hegeling lived at Castle Friesland, and Dietmarsch owed him allegiance. Many prin kinsman, old Wate, who bore rule in Sturmland, and was fa the minstrels Horand and Frute, both powerful lords in Den of Nifland; bold warriors both, and ever ready to help their l

One evening, at the feast, Morung of Nifland advised King was the best maid for him to woo, for she was famous in al the lady was justly praised; but that wild Hagen, her fathe warrior had met his death in fighting with him for her hand.

The king was much taken with what he heard of fair Hild asked who would undertake the wooing for him. The co

although the lord of Sturmland had no desire to go on any st
and Frute would accompany him he had no doubt the wooin

The three warriors, joined by Irold of Nordland, prepared
laden with costly wares, and a thousand armed men, and sta

After a long voyage they reached Balian, where wild Hage

Their arrival was greeted with the utmost amazement, fo
masts of the Danish ships were of shining cypress-wood, th
garments bore foreign wares from distant lands out of the
captains offered rich articles for sale, explaining that th
expedition.

When King Hagen heard what was going on at the wharf,
to be seen. Then Frute at once came forward, and, drawing
fugitives, who desired to be protected from their king, Hette

Hagen laughed when he heard this, for he had long wishe
he told the warriors to be of good courage, and to come up
They gave the king and queen rich presents of garments and
that Hagen would willingly have kept them in the country,
had left their wives and children in Hegelingland, where the

They all met in the banqueting-hall, and the strangers wer
looked out towards the sea.

"Go, Hilde," whispered the queen, "and greet the foreign l

The girl started with fear, for the hero of Sturmland was
featured man, with a large hooked nose, bald head, and long

"What are you looking at, Lord Wate?" said the queen. "D

"I am looking at my ship," answered the hero, "for a storm

Then the princess smiled and said:

"Are you not happy with us, noble warrior? or do you alw

"Lady," said Wate, "I never learned to talk sweet talk with
the stormy waves and for the din of battle, when the Norns s

This was the speech of the stern old man. But the other w

and granges, and of the minstrels and knights who served leave of their hosts and retired. The next day passed, as was

Horand used to sing, early in the morning and in the late delighted with his voice and his songs. Once, when he was sick with love for a beautiful maiden named Hilde. The prin she asked at length who the king was that cared for her. U and told her of her father's stern cruelty to all noble warrior what secret mission he and his friends had come, and entre was waiting eagerly for her arrival. Once there, he continue who knew far more beautiful songs than he.

Hilde promised that she would ask her father's permissio stuffs and jewels on board.

What she promised she did.

One day the men of Hegeling came before King Hagen, a had found that they had been falsely accused, and had the leave of Hagen, and return to their own land. The king wa not go without rich gifts.

"Sire," said Frute the Wise, "we are so rich that we canno kindness, come on board our galleys with the queen and her

Wild Hagen shook his head, but his daughter and the quee

At the appointed hour, when the sails were spread and t and their ladies appeared upon the strand. Boats were reac quickly into a boat steered by Horand. But when Hagen a Wate, Frute, and Irold thrust them back and pushed off fro and rushed into the sea till the waves dashed over his heac princess safely to the ship. Hagen ran along the shore and ca the Irish boats were not ready for sea, and even at that distance.

The voyage lasted many days and many nights. Fair Hilc her, now of great deeds, and now of love, till she was cor awaited them. He came down to meet them, and soon gain to go to Matelane. But when they were about to start, they they came nearer, were discovered to be ships forming a gre

of the cross. The Hegelings took it to be a fleet of crusaders very soon a flag was hoisted bearing the arms of Hagen, a ti

King Hettel and old Wate drew out their men in battle a was really to have a passage of arms with the warlike Irish k enemy's landing. The warriors were all of good cheer; but fa on the turmoil below, wrung her hands with grief that she sh

The galleys cast anchor, and boats were put off filled with made to their landing that the boatmen could not approach fought his way to land, followed by his bravest men. His bl Hettel fell wounded to the ground, and was with difficulty he and Hagen had a hand-to-hand encounter. Each fought l although both were severely wounded.

At length King Hettel, his head bandaged, and looking p combatants with Hilde leaning on his arm. He threw his a entreated them both to make peace for her sake.

Wild Hagen was touched by his daughter's words. He clas and then to the grim old hero of Sturmland.

Now that the battle was over, Wate went about binding th birth, with some healing herb, of whose virtues he was w morning the warriors all went to Matelane, where the marı Hilde to her daughter's wedding, which was celebrated in th



III. GU

King Hettel and fair Hilde lived happily at Matelane, and t
subjects, out of love and gratitude for the justice and protect
to the royal pair, Ortwin and Gudrûn (pronounced Goodr
roses. As the boy grew older, he was given into the charge o
him to know from the greatest warrior in the land. Gudrûn
mother, both by precept and example, in all woman's worl
every land for her beauty, her gentleness, and her wisdom.

Many noble princes came to woo her while she was y
Siegfried, gigantic in height, and brown of hue. With many
refusal. Queen Hilde, however, thought the hero too arbitr
women. Hettel was of the same opinion; so he told the wooe
household. The Moorish king returned to his distant realm i
bribed some faithless men with gold to keep him informed o

Now, at this time, King Ludwig ruled over Normandy and
son, Hartmut, was like his father in character, and help
determined to woo her for his wife. King Ludwig thought it
been his feudal superior, and had never forgiven him for hav
Queen Hilde had inherited her father's temper. The Lady Ge
that Hartmut was worthy of the noblest wife in Christendon
his offer would be accepted. The young warrior was please
Hegeling court, bearing rich presents. Queen Hilde accepted
bringing them, and added that she supposed the lord of N
father as his liege lord. The warriors were kindly treate
displeasure, and said that the husband of their daughter
ambassadors, seeing that no good would come of their furth

The Norman king was not much surprised at the result of powerful kings, chafed under the affront, and advised her s had thought of another plan. He possessed strongholds and in Scottish garb, accompanied by a large train of attendants. strikingly handsome. He was accustomed to ladies' smiles, a he never for a moment doubted his power of winning tl favourable wind filled the sails, but soon fell again, and the



GUDRÛN ON THE SHORE.

Meanwhile, another suitor had arrived at Matelane. This celebrated in many a victory; a faithful friend and loyal foe intelligence.

The maiden and he soon learned to understand each other
feelings.

When Hartmut arrived, in the guise of a Scottish prince, h

A favourable chance led Hartmut to the garden one day, a
at the same time explained who he was. She was startled, b
one else. She further told him to beware how he betrayed hi
a vassal, and his life would be in danger if they knew his na
young hero's cheek; he did not, however, betray his feelin
saying farewell to the king and queen, set sail for his own la

Herwig lingered on at the palace in the hope that he migh
alone. But, whether by accident, or because the queen prev
the king, and made a formal offer for Gudrûn's hand. Hettel
young to marry. This, however, was merely an excuse, for h
his peerless daughter.

Herwig found no rest at home. He assembled his forces,
only consisted of three thousand warriors, but they were or
was totally unprepared for the invasion. His heroes were at
men he could, and went out against the foe. Soon the clang
fiercely for a long time. At length Queen Hilde, taking Gu
place of combat, and spoke so wisely that she soon induced
so much pleased with the boldness and valour displayed by
but stipulated that the marriage should not take place for a y

Herwig spent some time at Matelane in company with c
several of his friends received their swords at the hands of o
be soon worthy of the honour of knighthood. At the jous
teacher's heart. But the rejoicings came to a sudden end th
brought news that the Moorish king, Siegfried, had fallen up

Hettel determined to send troops to help Herwig against
could be summoned; he set out at once, saying that they c
that he had not deserted them.

Herwig landed in a small bay. His heart was wrung when
that he was not strong enough to offer him battle. But he v
separated into companies, cut off isolated bands of free-b

matters went on for days and weeks. At length the Hegelin fought by sea and land, but, although the Moors suffered decisive battle. Siegfried knew that he had now no hope o chapter of accidents to get him out of his difficulties. And he

Whilst King Hettel and his heroes were fighting in Zealar land of the Hegelings. Ludwig had accompanied his son. To had taken it, and had carried away the Princess Gudrûn and that Hildburg whom Hagen found on the griffin's strand.

The first messenger, who brought the news of the Normar storming of the castle, and the carrying off of Gudrûn. The robbers; King Hettel sent to offer terms to Siegfried, telling king immediately offered to help to rescue the princess; Siegfried without more ado.

This being settled, they turned their attention to the shi them had been burnt in the fight, and of those that remaine started alone in the few vessels that remained, but Irolt the l was already approaching the shore. The masts and flags of were figures in long grey garments, with the staff of peace ir

"They are pilgrims going to the Holy Sepulchre," said Hor

The pilgrims disembarked and pitched their tents on th voyage.

"Necessity knows no law," said Wate. "These pious men n to do their penance in. Let us borrow their vessels and p enforced loan."

Horand and Frute warned their friends that such a deed hands in piteous entreaty. All in vain. King Hettel decided to

So the heroes sailed over the high seas in pursuit of the No

After many days' sail they saw before them a low flat encamped, upon whose banners was depicted a raven with to get quite close to the land, thanks to the pilgrims' ships, it known, than the Normans sprang to their feet, and shoutir

The battle began. Lances and arrows filled the air, and

Darkness alone put an end to the fight. The victory was u
watch-fires alone threw any light upon the scene. Then it wa
him that he should always regard him as a coward if he
challenge, and came out to meet the king. Many a shrewd b
adversary his death-wound. Seeing their leader fall, the Heg
engagement took place in the darkness. None could tell
comrade's spear. The leaders on either side ordered the horn
at a greater distance from each other than before. Knowing
the Normans thought prudence the better part of valour,
prisoners with them; for they were on their way home from

At daybreak, old Wate called his men to be up and doi
enemy flown. Wate and Herwig were keen to follow the N
them to be prudent. They reminded them of the numbers of
wait till the young men, who were growing up, should be ol

The wisdom of this advice was recognised by all. Herwig
he returned to Zealand to work for his people, until the time

Queen Hilde was sad at heart when she saw the Hegel
daughter. But what could she do? She was only a weak w
Gudrûn.

Horand, Morung, and Irolt mourned the dead king with h
themselves, and teach the youth of the land all warlike acco
time for vengeance came.





IV. QUEEI

Meanwhile the Norman fleet had reached its destination.

Queen Gerlind, her gentle daughter Ortrûn, their ladies, a to welcome the heroes home. After they had greeted the kin told her to be of good courage. Gudrûn was touched by th when Queen Gerlind would have kissed her, she recoiled f glittering eyes seemed to her a spiteful snake, ready to dart

"Eh, pretty puppet," said the offended queen. "What, so s have said more, but Hartmut interposed, saying that Gudrû were over. He then offered the princess his arm, and sorely him. Some of the townsfolk, watching her, said, "How beaut

Days and weeks passed on. Hartmut did his best to win asked her why she would not love him, and she replied tha love, but she was betrothed to Herwig, and would never bre as her son: she was determined to break Gudrûn's proud s tried soft words and flattering speeches; but finding these waited till her son had left home on a warlike expedition. her she might "try to tame the wild bird" in any fashion dignity.

No sooner was Hartmut gone, than Queen Gerlind set to and her maidens to cook and sweep, and do all the hardest Her soft hands were blistered with scrubbing pots and pan from early morning till late at night. The queen would so Norman crown than continue to slave in that manner, but sh

So she did all that was given her to do through the hot s
single murmur at her hard fate.

Year after year she lived this wretched life. At length H
father, mother, and sister with warm affection, and then l
clothing, and doing hard work, he was very angry with his
forgive what was past and gone, and grant him her love,
greatness of the kingdom he offered to share with her. But
once, and never again. So he left her, but took care to protec

Gudrûn was restored to her former position, and slept tha
found the princess Ortrûn, whom she had not seen for a l
together, and learnt to love each other warmly. As autumn
sadder than her wont, and asked her the reason of the chang
Hartmut's entreaties, but remained obdurate as ever, Ge
princess.

While the two girls were talking, Hartmut joined them, an

"Lady Gudrûn, the warrior to whom you plighted your t
allowed so many years to pass without coming in search of
likely married to another."

"You do not know him, noble hero," answered Gudrûn; "d

"What if he has fallen in battle, or has died of some illness

"Then he shall find me faithful when I join him where t
courageous resolve.

So Hartmut took leave of her, and again went away to try

When he was gone, Queen Gerlind once more deposed G
making her work from early morning till late at night, and
worked too hard to give her an excuse for inflicting this last

More years passed on, and at length Hartmut returned vic
as ever to Herwig.

Gerlind, after this, was harder than ever to Gudrûn. The o
had to spin and card flax and wool, while their beloved mis
often, on her return from the shore, she sank into an exhaus
to take off her wet garments. At last matters came to such a

and asked the queen how she dared treat a princess with su
her mistress in her work.

This was just what Hildburg wanted. Her great desire was
her toil. Still Gudrûn had often to go down to the shore a
occasions she saw a swan come swimming over the sea.

"O swan, had I thy wings, I would soar into the sky and hi

While she spoke, the swan dived into the sea, and in its pl

"O heart long tried and true, thy grief shall pass away: thy

So saying, the mermaid dived, and again the white swan
flew three times round the princess, and sang:

"True love on the earth may yet be found,
True hearts that never roam;
Lo, through the breakers' foam
'Tis thy warrior's bark o'er the wave doth bound,
To lead his true-love home."



MEETING OF OLD FRIENDS.

It was well for Gudrûn that she had this secret hope to s
The princess and Hildburg were forced to wash the clothes
shoes. When they begged for shoes, the cold was so terrible,
to scourge them with thorns if their day's work were not
wind, and their beautiful hair blowing about their faces, the
along the shore, rowed by two warriors in full armour. The
fled, but the men called to them to stop, and tell them wha
they would throw the linen into the sea unless they receive
whispered:—

"See, it is Herwig. I know him well, but he—he has forgot

And in good truth the hero was unaware that his long-los
her fluttering hair back from her face, than he recognised
other warrior opened his visor, Gudrûn exclaimed, “Ortwin!

Then Ortwin turned to her companion, and said, taking he

“It is you, Hildburg! Do not be ashamed to confess that
openly betrothed years ago, had not the Normans carried yo

They then exchanged the kiss of betrothal.

Herwig wished to take the two girls away with them at
openly on the morrow for Gudrûn and Hildburg, who should

The two girls stood on the shore watching the boat as l
begged her friend to help her to finish the washing. But Guc
and, so saying, she cast one garment after another into th
smile; while poor Hildburg tremblingly remembered that the

When they reached the castle, Gerlind came down to me
done with the linen. Gudrûn answered that the work was to
sea, where Queen Gerlind’s men might find them yet, if she
dumb with astonishment when she heard the gentle, patien
herself, she called her bond-women to fetch thorny rods, and
do as they were desired; but Gudrûn called to them to stop,
queen on the morrow.

“And will you really marry Hartmut?” asked Gerlind joyfu

“Bring the king here,” said Gudrûn; “I would speak with h

The queen went thoughtfully to her son, and said:—

“Hartmut, that obstinate girl has given in at last, and has

“No ‘but,’” cried the hero, “she consents!—mother, I must
room.

When he saw Gudrûn, he would have clasped her in his ar
she could not listen to him in the abode of her misery; but th
the warriors, she would receive, and give the bridal ring. H
all that was necessary for the comfort and well-being of the

His orders were fulfilled. The princess and Hildburg kept

safe in their sleeping chamber that they heard of the arrival





V. BATTLE A

Before day-break one of the maidens stationed herself at th
she saw vessels full of armed men approaching the shore; a
mistress and told her the good news. Not long after, the alar
just woke up.

Queen Gerlind had her wits about her more than any on
had given the requisite orders to the garrison before Ludw
were ready, they countermanded her orders, and instead of
all her warnings and entreaties.

Each party moved forward to meet the other in close arra
and Hartmut fought hand to hand, and Ortwin had well be
spear. But he too was unable to withstand the king, and v
wounded. Meantime Herwig and Ludwig had met, and after

“The king is dead!” cried his men, and they fled inconti

Moor. The old hero of Sturmland pressed the advantage. Hi
in the front rank. When the terrified Normans fled to the
them. They only got the great gate shut just in time. But V
ladders and storming tackle, meaning to scale the wall.

Hartmut, ignorant of his father's death, had continued to
then retreated slowly to the castle with his immediate foll
giving a man a naked sword, and pointing with fierce earn
mother, and feared that she was telling the man to go and m
command:

"Coward! If you raise your hand to murder any woman, I

The man let the sword fall to the ground, and slunk awa
sight of old Wate at the castle gate. He looked round for he
the banners of the Hegelings and their allies, and their fo
Hartmut was too brave to fly; he prepared to defend hims
attack him; and although he fought desperately, it had go
warrior's way, and pleaded for his rival's life. In the heat o
him; he brought down one of his sledge-hammer blows
unconscious on the ground beside many a dead and dying N
Leaving Hartmut alone, he bent over his friend, and, to his j
was on his feet again, Wate asked:

"What devil possessed you to make me spare the life of tha

"No devil at all," replied Herwig; "the noble Gudrûn loves
life should be spared."

"Women, women!" cried the old warrior. "They are all ali
blown by the breeze. But now let us haste, and trap the she-

At length the castle gate was burst open, and the hero of S
the women's apartments. There he found Gudrûn surrounde
Gerlind knelt at her feet and entreated her protection.

"Where is the she-wolf?" shouted Wate. "Speak, Gudrûn, a

He was awful to look upon, with his grim, stern face, his
Gudrûn did not quail, nor did she utter a single word to be
and quiet, full of a gentle dignity, and looked at the angry ol



GERLIND AND ORTRUN AT GUDRÛN'S FEET.

He cast a quick glance round the room in search of Gerlir
The moment he saw the glittering, snaky eyes, he caught Ge
her head, and flung both it and the body over the wall. "No
belongs to the serpent's brood, and must share her mother's

But Gudrûn held the maiden tightly clasped in her arms,
Ortrûn had shown her, so Wate was fain to be satisfied with

Meanwhile the fighting outside the castle had also ceased

eighty warriors that were left him.

Three days later, the victorious army went on board th
Morung and his men to garrison Cassian. Hartmut, and
conquerors. On their way they touched at Wölpensand, w
those who fell in the old fight buried; and there the heroes
the churchyard, looking at the graves: she thought of her s
coming up to her, took her by the hand and led her to the
the remainder of the voyage, Gudrûn managed to throw
Siegfried's noble and warlike deeds.

In the meantime Queen Hilde, and Hergart, Herwig's sis
Hegeling army must soon return, but how would it return
hopeful as her young companion, for she was more used t
Hergart saw the fleet appear in the distance, and uttering
back.

Before the queen and her ladies could get down to the sho
told her the good news.

The rest of the ships were not long in arriving, and soon H
Gudrûn. Time passed on, and joy reigned in every breast
pitied him, and begged Queen Hilde to use her influence to
But Hilde explained how impossible it was to let a man go fr
when he could. Hartmut one day by accident overheard He
deeply touched. He began to think that she was, if poss
opportunity he could find of speaking to her. It was not long
about it, and asked for her consent to his marriage with He
him back his sword and freedom, for the husband of swe
Hegelings.

A few weeks later, a great marriage feast was held, in wh
blessing on their vows; after which they adjourned to th
forgotten for the sake of the happiness that now prevailed.
last song. In it he told of the great deeds he had known; he
and when he ceased, there was not a dry eye in the hall, f
tear.

BEOWULF FIGHTS WITH GRENDEL'S MOTHER.

BEO

(*I.E.*, BEE-WOLF, (

One evening while the warriors were feasting in King Hro harp, and sang of the coming of Skiöld, the son whom Odin babe had been seen lying on a shield floating on the wav tended, and how he had become a mighty king and warrior had left to his children and grandchildren; and last of all h him, was the patron of all peaceful arts, the protector of all p

Many heroes were collected round the king that night at H which, carved in stone, adorned the battlements. At length t there were too many of them to be accommodated elsewh thirty brave men lay down to sleep on the couches spread f

them, they were gone. The room was in confusion, here
struggle.

King Hrodgar came himself as soon as he heard what had
the cause of the disaster. He followed the blood-stains throu
saw the deep footprints of a giant. The whole affair was cl
been banished the land by the aid of a great magician, had
come back, ten warriors offered to keep watch in the hall,
were gone. They had either been surprised in their sleep, c
Skiöldungs' people were brave and fearless, so twelve other
themselves down to sleep in their armour, while the twelfth,

At midnight the giant came, smacking his great lips, and
heard all that took place; but he could neither speak nor m
back senseless. Next morning, when with infinite trouble the
not, tell what he had seen. He picked up his arms and his h
strand without a word or sign of farewell to any one. A ve
board, and had soon left the ill-fated shores of Jutland behin

II. Beowulf, t

Hygelak, a brave and heroic man, ruled over Gothland at
chief among whom was his nephew Beowulf (bee-hunter, *i.*
Gothland, he found that the Swedes had invaded the countr
the battle was fought, and would have gone badly with th
displayed by Beowulf, who, in spite of repeated disaster, alv
the spirits of his men, and at last the Swedes had to return t
a valiant hero.

During the feast that was given in honour of this great vi
the great deeds of past and present times. He sang of Siegn
with giants and dragons. Then, striking yet louder chords
him to do yet greater things, to seek out and slay the ho
Skiöldungs' hall, and fed on the blood of heroes.

Beowulf promised to go and try to slay the monster that h
Breka by name, was envious of Beowulf's fame, and propos

and fight the monsters of the deep. They would then see wh
shore first after the battle was over should receive the prize
place on the morrow, and King Hygelak promised to give t
victor.

Next morning the sun rose red in the east, the stormy s
demanding a human sacrifice. The two bold swimmers stoo
their hands. When the signal was given, they flung themsel
close together, that they might come to each other's help if
parted by waves which bore them in different directions. B
about until it was time to return. Beowulf, on the contrary,
great cliffs that towered above the water, a place that swar
wait for their prey. Gigantic arms were stretched out to gr
every sort tried to clutch and stifle him, but he stabbed the
would have dragged him down to his cave, but he stabbed
water. After a long struggle he again reached the open sea,
should quite have set. The storm was over, so that there wa
reach the shore. He turned with a triumphant smile to gr
present, when the hero dragged the monstrous form of th
princes crowded round the hideous creature, and gazed at hi

"Here is the gold chain," said the king to Breka. "You hav
more than you, in that he has conquered and slain one of
sword Nägling with the golden hilt, and the Runic letters
possessor."

Beowulf was held in high honour by the Goths; but he co
longed to free the royal palace of the Skiöldungs from the m
castle, accompanied by the minstrel, and fifteen noble and c

On their ship touching the strand below the fortress, the w
to King Hrodgar's land. When he learnt their names and bu
also received them with joy and gratitude. The minstrel
prophesied that he would conquer and slay the monster of
angry and jealous. He said it was Breka, not Beowulf,
undertaking an enterprise that would very likely lead him to
Grendel. Upon this, Beowulf exclaimed indignantly that he l
was sharp enough both to pierce the hide of the monster an
silent, and promised the Goth that if he were victorious, h

alliance with his people.

At night-fall Hrodgar and his warriors withdrew, and serv
Beowulf felt so confident of victory, that he laid aside his h
in attendance.

“I intend to master Grendel with my fists,” he said; “he is

Midnight came, and the fiend of the fen rose out of his
himself in a veil of mist, made his way to the palace. He en
satisfaction spread over his countenance, displaying his grea
same time he stretched out his hairy hands, which were furn

The warriors were all sunk in a sleep so profound as to
that only by a mighty effort. He watched the monster thro
intended victims, uncertain with whom to commence. At la
upon one of the sleepers, whom he rapidly slew, drinking hi
to Beowulf. But the hero seized his outstretched arm in su
terrible struggle between the man and the demon. The hall
in ruins. The sleepers awoke. They drew their swords and fe
his scaly hide, and they were fain to take refuge in out-of-th
the wrestlers. At length Grendel had to acknowledge Beow
effort he succeeded in freeing himself from the hero’s gras
socket, remained in his antagonist’s hands. Then, with a hov
a trail of blood to mark the path by which he had gone.

The Gothic hero stood in the middle of the vast hall, ho
streamed in at the window and lighted up his head as with
with awe and reverence. Then he fastened the trophy of hi
returned thanks to All-father for having given him strength
joined him in his praise and thanksgiving.

When the Goths rose from their knees, they saw the
astonishment, now at them, and now at the monster’s arm
during the night.

The king was at first too much amazed to speak, but rec
gifts he had prepared to reward the victor. The warrior sc
Hrodgar gave to Beowulf with many words of gratitude for
the Goth to stand his friend and his son’s friend as long as th

After these things the king ordered a great feast to be pre
done, Hunford came forward and said:

"Noble Beowulf, I wronged you yesterday evening by my
what you were. Will you accept my sword Hrunting? it w
blood, and, in taking it, will you grant me your forgiveness a

The two heroes shook hands in token of their reconciliatio

When the feast was over, and the warriors sat over their v
and of the alliance which had that day been concluded l
finished, Queen Walchtheov filled the goblets of all present.
in remembrance of her, together with a ring and a necklace
(Heime) in the olden time stole from the Brosing (Harlung?)

"Wear them," she added, "for our sakes, but also for you
battles you will have to fight during a long life."

Beowulf thanked the queen in seemly fashion, and then th

While the king and his men, and Beowulf and his friends,
for many warriors, who, no longer fearing a one-armed
overflowing.

The night, however, was not to pass as quietly as was hop

III. The She-W

At midnight a great column of water rose in the midst of
as grey as her garments. Her eyes shone like coals of fire, h
stretched out as though in search for prey. It was Grendel's
the sea, crossed the morass, and entered the great hall;
resistance, and slaked her thirst with their warm blood.

Deep was the sorrow of both king and people next day
land. Then Beowulf said that the cause of all this wretched
persecute the Skiöldungs as long as she lived. The only thing
slay her. This he was prepared to do. He begged Hrodgar to
uncle Hygelak, king of Gothland, should he fall in his strugg

The whole party then went down to the shore, and Beowu
monster's dwelling. Finding that it was a longer way than h
his friends, who one and all entreated him to give up the ent

"Wait for me two days and nights," he said, "and if I do r
the mer-woman; but that is a matter that is in the hands of t

Having thus spoken, the hero tore himself away from his
armour on, and with Hunford's good sword at his side.

He swam a long way. At last he saw a light deep down in
gods have me in their keeping!" He dived down, down, dov
snapped at him as he shot past, but his coat of mail was
though with hooks, and dragged along so swiftly that he cc
the crystal hall of a submarine palace, and face to face with

Then began a terrible struggle. Beowulf and the giantess
shook so that they threatened to fall. The two wrestlers fell t
out a sharp knife to cut his throat, but Wieland's armour wa
again. The giantess then drew a monstrous sword, so heavy
could use it, Beowulf made an unexpected spring upon her, a
in both hands, and, swinging it with all his strength, cut off
he rested awhile, leaning on his sword. After a few minutes
of sea-weed. He cut off his head, meaning to take it with hi
blood began to flow from the monster's body in a great gurg
out of the entrance door into the sea. The blade of the gian
the rays of the sun. The golden hilt of the sword and Grend
out of the depths of the sea.

His friends were collected on the shore, their hearts fille
with blood, and knew not whose it was. So when the hero ap

Hrodgar and his people could find no words that would fi
from two such foes as Grendel and his mother; and when I
were laden with blessings and gifts of all kinds.

Hygelak received his nephew with great delight, and liste
ecstasy.

IV. Beowulf

Many years passed away in peace and quiet. At last the
granges and cottages. Before King Hygelak could reach the
taken to their ships again, and were far away. The king d
marauders; he would not listen to Beowulf when he advise
onslaught.

The Goths landed in Friesland without opposition, and,
many a farmstead, and taking many a castle and township. N
had played an honourable part in the great Bravalla-fight; th
and they did not shun to make ready for battle. A murde
invaders, in which the latter were defeated, and obliged t
Beowulf and the noblest of the warriors alone stood their
retreat until they had rescued and carried off Hygelak's body

Queen Hygd was at first so overwhelmed with sorrow fo
matters of state; but after a time she roused herself from he
was well that she did so, for while she was still wrapped
themselves, and creating much disturbance. The royal wido
before the assembly, spoke of the anarchy into which the c
young to govern the kingdom, and preserve it from civil or f
king. The notables all cheered, and shouted that Beowulf sho

"And do you really think, ye men of Gothland, that I w
honours? May the gods, the avengers of all evil, preserve me
his shield, and holding him aloft, "here is our king. I will b
enough and wise enough to take the reins of government int

Nobody ventured to remonstrate with Beowulf; indeed, th
matter was settled.

Years passed on, and Beowulf kept his word. He ruled th
with the help of Queen Hygd educated the young king with
in his hands, there was every hope that he would use it for
Goths. Like his former guardian and teacher Beowulf, the k
had not shown themselves his enemies. So when Eanmund a
as fugitives, he received them with all kindness. He often t
against their father, and offered to arrange matters with him

earnestly on this subject, Eanmund, a passionate, hot-temp warrior like him. Hardred sharply told him to remember to little self-control he ever had, drew his sword and stabbed h avenged the king's murder by slaying Eanmund; but Eadgils the throne.

The Gothic Allthing, the assembly of all the free men of th made known, and by a unanimous vote Beowulf was electe to rule his people justly.

V. The Fight w

When Hardred's death was noised abroad, several of the kept so strict a watch on the borders that the enemy was b the attacks of these sea-wolves, when Eadgils, king of Swith death. The Goths and Swedes met, and fought a murderous Eadgils. After the death of their king, the Swedes retire consequence of this victory was a lasting peace. No viking few quarrels arose among the nobles to disturb the internal and wisdom. No one entreating his help was ever sent empty

Forty years or more passed after this fashion. The hero h happiness would last as long as he lived. But he was to Gothland, against whom all weapons and armies were usel discovery and punishment at his master's hands, fled from there, he looked about for some cave in which he might already tenanted by an immense dragon, which lay stretch were treasures of all sorts. The man looked greedily at the s had but a few of these treasures, I could buy my freedom, a He slipped softly past the monster, and stole a golden pot, escaped safely, and going back to his master, bought his fre this deed would bring down upon the land.

The dragon, which had watched over its hoard for hundre that it had been robbed. At nightfall it crept out of its hol voice and howled so loud, that the earth shook, at the same homesteads far and wide. The men, who sought to put out

monster's cave, where they perished miserably. This happer warriors went out against the dragon, and tried to kill it, bu creature defended itself.

The old king heard the story of these events with infinit when his friends remonstrated with him on his rashness, he enemies, and that the gods would help him. He further ann had done the monster Grendel, the son of the sea-witch, but without such protection. He therefore had a shield made t completely. This done, he chose eleven of his bravest w Wichstan, the man who avenged King Hardred's death.

Beowulf and his companions set out on their journey, and flowed a brook whose waters were made boiling hot by the

The king bade his friends wait a little way off, until they mouth of the cave, he called the dragon to come forth. The Both combatants were hidden from view in a dense clou bellowing of the monster, which at the same time slashed o sound and regularity. For a moment the smoke and flames saw that the dragon had just seized their king in its great aside and strove to hide behind rocks and trees; but the ele was burnt up in a twinkling, and he was obliged to seek she down Beowulf's iron shield, and caught him a second time force, that the iron rings of his coat of mail cracked like himself. Then Wichstan seized his opportunity, when the plunged his sword into the fleshy part of its throat under encircled both its adversaries with its tail, but Beowulf at t weapon so deep that the point came out at the dragon's t threw themselves on a ledge of rock, panting and exhausted.

When they had recovered a little, the heroes loosened t from under the king's gorget. He wanted to bind up the sli useless, as the hurt had been given by the dragon's tooth, an

"I must die," he added, "but I go to my forefathers witho given me no son and heir. I can look back on my past life justice to all."

He then asked Wichstan to fetch him a drink of water,

cave, that he might see, with his own eyes, the last gift he sh

His commands were obeyed, and a few minutes later he h
in silent grief. Beowulf had been his dearest friend, and
Meanwhile the ten warriors had come out of their hiding-p
what had chanced, they raised their voices in mourning; bu
at least to weep for their own cowardice, and not for the her
best of their way to other lands, as he could not answer for
they had deserted their king in his hour of need.



BEOWULF DYING.

With bowed heads and shame-stricken faces the men turn
their heads in countries where their names were unknown.

The body of Beowulf was borne to its funeral pile on the
sorrow of a nation. When the funeral rites had all been perfo
For the Goths would have none of the gold their beloved ki
heart of the earth as in the olden time when the dragon g

events not hurtful.



PART

I. CAROLING

II. KING ARTHUR A

III. TANI

MALAGIS FETCHES THE HORSE BAYARD BACK FROM HEL

CAROLINGI

The CHILDRE

HAY

Sa

Franks, had returned from Hungary. He had conquered th
Paris with much booty.

High festival was being held in the royal palace, for the
counties and baronies amongst those of his warriors whom
employed, Lord Hug of Dordone came forward, and asked t
by Count Haymon of Dordone, that he had not mentioned
that he had not forgotten Haymon, but he considered that
he gave him more, it would only make him think himself a
off his allegiance to the Frankish crown.

"He is a faithful vassal, sire," answered Hug, "as true as
meaner men, he may in good truth forget his oath of allegi
aid from many a trusty comrade."

As he spoke, the hero touched his sword significantly. Th
that he drew his sword, and, next moment, the good lord's h

The courtiers drew back in speechless horror, and Haym
what had happened. When he heard the reason of the king
went out without further word or greeting.

As soon as he reached his own castle, he gathered his fr
great battle was fought; but continual conflict raged betwee
peasantry suffered terribly. Haymon was able to move ab
people began to say he rode a magic horse, gifted with th
years, till at last King Karl came with a large army, and besie

One morning, when matters were in this position, Hayn
favourite horse; but the stall was empty, the good steed Bay
whether it was worth while carrying on such a hopeless wa
with a long beard, came to him, and told him that he knev
hidden it in Mount Vulcanus, which is near the mouth of
difficulties. Then, without waiting for a word of thanks or w

When he got outside the castle gate, Malagis pulled a sm
good deal of it in the air, and the wind carried it over the b
whole army. While the men-at-arms were thus sneezing, an
walked through their lines, and pursued his journey to Mour

He reached the foot of the great mountain in safety, and s
search of the ruler of the world of fire, greeted him courteo
come to offer his valuable services to his Satanic majesty.
hear the followers of the black art vaunt their powers and
really do, he would give him a chance of showing off.

"You must know, fellow," he continued, "that I have alwa
an exertion now. I am grown too old for that sort of thing, s
enough to satisfy me. I therefore took possession of it, and
through the world of men more at my ease than before; but
mouth as he did so, "if I were not the devil myself, I shoul

even let me mount him. I have therefore put him into the vo
for months to look after this work myself, but hitherto witho

"Well spoken, great king," said Malagis, "but should I not
to it? Let me therefore beg you to withdraw the fire and smo
mountain, and enter upon my duty. Perhaps, also, the hors
fresh air."

Satan consented to do as he was asked. He climbed to th
the spirits of the nether-world to hold back the flames. As
descended into the abyss, and took up his position near th
handful of ashes up in the air. But it was really a sleeping-po
and snoring so loud that the mountain trembled at the sound
now approached the horse, which snapped and kicked at
"Bayard," than the creature pricked up its ears, and when h
gentle as a lamb, and allowed him to lead it to the upper-wo

"To Haymon!" cried Malagis, springing on its back; and t
over hill and dale, heath and morass.

At the sound of the whinny, the prince of darkness awoke
Without loss of time, he flung himself astride of a storm-clo
quietly said, "Abracadabra," at the same time holding up h
Lucifer was so much startled by the sight of the cross that he
and from that day forward he has had a limp in his gait.

Meanwhile Count Haymon was in sore distress. He was h
dead, or else had deserted him. He was alone and desolate.
down hack, listening bitterly to the bay of the blood-hounds,
gallop into the clearing in front, and exclaimed in joy:

"Malagis, cousin Malagis, and Bayard, faithful Bayard! My

Scarcely had he uttered these words when his pursuers w
and faced his foes. He and his horse fought together, and bu

Haymon's evil fortune now changed to good. Friends ca
hands. The paladins of the great king avoided giving him h
proud king longed for peace, and at last sent ambassadors to
pay him four times the weight in gold of the murdered h
embassy. Haymon received the messengers with all honour,

offered by Karl, he said that the king's expiation for the m
must further give his sister Aya to Haymon in marriage. Th
consented, partly because the country needed peace, and
influence with her brother to that end.

So peace was at length concluded. Count Haymon was re
princess. After the wedding, the newly married couple retire
in love and unity. But Haymon's was too active a dispositio
and to do great deeds. So he crossed over the Pyrenees into
up a constant internecine war. For the first few years Count
and children, but when the fortune of war led him further s
his beautiful home, and all that it contained.

Reinold and

Countess Aya mourned him as dead, and expended all he
care, and who rewarded her for her pains by growing up int
image, was taller and stronger than his brothers, and a bette
much of his father's quick temper; but to his mother he was

The four lads, Richard, Adelhart, Wichart, and Reinold ha
came to Pierlepont to say that Count Haymon was lying sic
where hot mineral springs were to be found. He wanted
husband without a moment's delay, and set out accompanie

On her arrival at the inn, she hastened to embrace her
embraced their sick father tenderly, but Reinold hung back.

"Who is this broken-down old man?" he cried. "It canno
look much of a warrior. I wonder if he will try a bout with m

"Boy," said Haymon, standing up straight, "do you not k
gave me years ago, and at these scars which I gained in batt

"And," continued the countess, "does not my love for him

"Yes, mother," cried Reinold, "I recognise him now;" an
nearly all the breath out of his body.

"Ah, this one is my son, and no mistake," said Haymon. "H

Aya and her sons were anxious to hear all that the count them all that had befallen him, and ended by saying that he three elder sons to divide equally amongst them, whilst his horse Bayard, if he could manage to ride it.

Reinold did not in the least doubt his powers of riding ar and see him mount his new steed. They followed the lad in the halter in one hand, was about to mount, when the ho ground. The bold warrior, ashamed of his fall, sprang to his fierce struggle for mastery, which ended in the victory of more stood in its stall, Haymon went up to the noble animal

“Bayard, this is my son, your future master.”

The horse seemed to understand, for it laid its head ge mastery.

Count Haymon was soon strong enough to return to Pierl that the king, who had lately been crowned emperor at Rom heir, Prince Ludwig, and on several squires of noble birth. H occasion.

A great tournament was held before the emperor knighte himself worthy of the honour about to be bestowed on h endless acclamations. After the ceremony of knighting the y his father’s successor in the empire. The young king’s first except to the brothers alone; these he passed over entirely. I the day of general rejoicing was to be a fast day for them. R and helped himself to all he needed for himself and his broth

The reason of this extraordinary conduct on Ludwig’s pa and prowess Reinold had displayed in the lists; above all, h confided his dislike of Reinold to his favourite, Ganelon, a f and the country of him whom he chose to regard as his e Ludwig, who was famous for his skill in playing chess, shoul him, each player to stake his head to the other. Reinold wou brother’s death would cause him. Ludwig agreed to the plar to play on such terms, saying that if he won, he could no Ludwig would not listen to any excuse, saying he would h young hero gave way, much against his will.

A few minutes later the two men were seated opposite e
who had been chosen umpires, stood beside the table and w
men on the one side were made of gold, those on the other
the first move. The five stipulated games were played one
mated. The umpires were silent. The king swept the piece
played for the sake of his life and honour, that the head of
board and flung it in his face with such force that the blood

The hero instantly rose and withdrew. As he crossed the c
what was the matter. On learning what had taken place, t
should be got ready for their departure, and sent a servant
Then, turning to Adelhart, he said he would fetch him the
once directed his steps to the throne-room, where the empe
and the umpires were there also. Reinold advanced to the t
were not so. Two of them were afraid, and held their peac
drew his sword Flammberg, and with one stroke severed Lu
draw breath, the brothers had left the room. On reaching the
accompanied by Haymon and the rest of their party.

They were pursued on the instant. The men-at-arms cam
From the first there seemed to be very little chance for Cou
support them, and the enemy's numbers increased every m
horses, except Bayard, which bore bold Reinold here, there,
that further contest was useless, Reinold called to his fath
brothers lost no time in obeying him but Haymon was so
Although bearing a fourfold burden, Bayard galloped away a



THE CHILDREN OF HAYMON.

Haymon meantime yielded himself prisoner to Bishop Tu
the emperor refused to be bound by Turpin's promise, and
his son had committed. The bishop's entreaties were vain.
leave his service if he persisted in ordering Haymon's deatl
making him swear to deliver his sons into his hands on the
eyes, Haymon took the oath demanded of him.

Meanwhile the brothers journeyed rapidly through the l
place, for they were outlaws, whose life was forfeited if they
a Moorish chieftain, with whom they made friends, and to v
serving him well; but when, at the expiration of that time,

Moor, who thought them unable to defend their rights, refus
off his head. It was certainly an effectual way of ending the
the brothers. This time they turned for protection to Iwo,
prince received them with every mark of honour, and with
he heard of the imperial ban under which they lived, Iwo
Some of his advisers wanted him to get rid of the brothers a
court the emperor's favour by delivering the outlaws into h
thing to do would be to bind the heroes by some strong ti
followed by Iwo, who gave Reinold his only daughter Claris
the sea. There a strong fortress called Montalban was built,
occasion the emperor's forces besieged it for a whole year, a

"Look," cried Richard, looking down from the battleme
broken wing. Up, Reinold, and after it, that we may send it h

"I have something else to do," answered his brother thoug
our good mother. The longing to see her again gnaws at my

His brothers agreed to go with him; so they armed then
armour, and set out for Castle Pierlepont. They got there sa
who could not do enough to show them how happy their co

The chamberlain who had taken them into the presence
determined to betray them. He went at once to his lord, C
reminded him of his oath to the emperor. Haymon was ve
then, but refrained. After taking counsel with himself, he m
take his sons prisoner, and march them off to the emperor;
they reached Paris. So he called his men-at-arms to follo
crossing the court, would have hidden her sons, but they ref
to defend their lives to the last. Reinold's great strength ser
arms fell back. Haymon alone stood firm. Reinold swung
remember that it was his father who stood before him. Rein
him prisoner.

"The man that would have delivered his own children up
guise that befits his knightly character," said Reinold.

The men-at-arms stood so much in awe of the young
obedience. Reinold, therefore, sent one of them to fetch a
bound him to the saddle. Then calling a boy, he placed the r

count, however, had not so far to go, after all; for, meeting
mounted on a horse, and taken back to Pierlepont.

The brothers were enjoying themselves in their old hom
castle. Reinold was alone with his mother when the orde
snatched up his sword, but his mother silently pointed to t
him hastily in his pilgrim's robes, and led him out of the ca
and, if it might be, save her other sons; but she found them
wept and wrung her hands, for she knew that she was powe

Meantime Reinold was hastening back to Montalban as
and knew that delay would be fatal. Arrived at home, he w
see him. After eating a few mouthfuls of food hastily, he mo
horse had had wings.

He halted in a thick wood near the town, dismounted, a
the foot of a great tree, and began to consider what woul
presently fell asleep, and dreamt that a necromancer wa
anxiously, and called "Bayard," but in vain. He called loude
marks of his horse's feet, but found none.

At the edge of the wood, he met a pilgrim, who spoke to h
his hood, and looked at Reinold with a smile, and the you
promised to restore the brothers and Bayard safe and soun
over himself and Reinold, at the same time muttering his
likeness of crippled beggars. Together they limped into Paris

A crowd of richly-dressed lords and ladies were crossing
island-city with the mainland. The emperor was there also,
promised the horse Bayard, if he would fight and conquer t
at once it stopped short, whinnied, jerked the reins out of th
watching the procession.

"Bayard is strangely constituted," cried Count Roland; "
knights."

"Bayard! Is this Bayard?" asked one of the beggars. "O
comrade to mount him. A holy man told us that if he did so,

"Well, Cousin Roland," said the emperor, "help the poor
only hope it *will* be a miracle, and that the miserable wretch

Roland signed to his servants, who with much difficulty l
three times before he was safely settled. No sooner was he fi
with the heel of one of his wooden shoes, and galloped awa
be much frightened lest his comrade should meet with some

At midnight, a little man might have been seen creepin
continually murmuring, “Ista, sista, pista, abracadabra!” An
stars grow dim. He at last reached a tall, gloomy-looking ho
their heads and fallen asleep at his approach. The strong o
staff. He entered, and went straight to an underground dun
some mysterious words, and the chains fell from off them.

“Rise, brothers,” he said; “your cousin Malagis is here. He

So they rose and followed him.

Before leaving Paris, the necromancer went to the slee
sword. Karl immediately gave them to him.

The emperor’s feelings next morning may be more readil
had taken place during the night. He longed more than ever
how to accomplish his desire.

Cunning Ganelon then said that he was sure that Iwo ha
emperor. Karl tried the plan, and won Iwo to his side, on pa

This done, the faithless traitor went to Montalban, and sai
emperor to let bygones be bygones, and all would now be
and in the garb of penitents, and there beg forgiveness. The
and to restore them to their ancient dignities.

When the brothers were about to start for Falkalone,
treacherous one, adding that she knew her father would se
unnatural daughter, and bade her hold her peace. He then
four swords, which his sister-in-law handed him, under the s

As the brothers were riding on their asses up the steep an
armed band of warriors. Adelhart divided the swords
themselves so well, that the count of Châlons, fearful of los
where the brothers had taken their stand, and starve them o

The four weary men sat down to rest. They looked anxi

day was over, and evening coming on apace, when all at or
waved by a horseman who was galloping towards ther
immediately recognised his Bayard, and his cousin the necro

The battle at once began in the plain below. Before it had
neigh of pleasure the noble horse broke through the ener
threw his cousin the reins, and at the same time handed him
himself into the saddle, and rode down to the place of comb
some of the riderless chargers that were flying from the fi
Châlons only succeeded in saving the remnant of his forces b

"Who told the magician? Who is the traitor?" cried the em

After many conjectures had been hazarded, every one cam
true state of matters to Malagis, and one of the courtiers
monastery of Beaurepart. Upon which the emperor said gr
him from his vengeance, and immediately despatched Rolan

When Reinold first returned to Montalban, it was his firm
but Clarissa's entreaties prevailed, and he promised to spa
refuge in the monastery. He never thought of the emperor t
he learnt that Karl had sent to take Iwo out of the monast
much troubled in spirit when her husband told her the news

"Ah, my baby," she said, bending over her child, "perha
people will point at you and say, 'Yes, he is very brave, and
the gallows,' and then you will creep away from the as
wilderness."

Reinold sat for some minutes in thoughtful silence; then sp

"You are as wise and good as one of God's angels. The trai

He hastened to the stable, mounted his horse, and gall
standing at the gallows with the cord round his neck. Reinc
Iwo's neck, exclaiming, "Be off, you rascal, lest you be han
would have recaptured the prince of Tarasconia. Count Rol
his length upon the ground, and Reinold rode away, saying,

Several of the paladins, who had witnessed the short com
what had occurred. Roland had never been unhorsed befc

grievously to heart. He rode away in silence; not to Paris, bu
for his overthrow.

As he was riding through a wood, he met a man with a cr
to be Richard, Reinold's brother. He took him prisoner, and
relationship, took him to Paris, and delivered him to the
condemned Richard to be hung at Monfaucon, and asked v
sentence carried out. They all refused, saying that hanging
new-made knight, offered his services to the emperor. A p
execution might be delayed until he had had time to pray fo

But instead of going to St. Denys, the holy man went to
him make haste if he would arrive at Monfaucon in time to
was none other than he—went to the kitchen to ask for som
journey on foot.

Reinold, Adelhart, Wichart, and their men soon reached
stretched themselves out on the grass and fell asleep. Wh
Bayard, hearing them, awoke his master with a kick. In anot
whom they soon put to flight. They then set Richard free,
prisoner.

The emperor, finding that all his former attempts to aveng
of action. He called out a large army, and marched to lay sie

The fortress was strictly invested. The besieged ventured c
for the purpose of getting provisions, etc. Much blood was s
went on for years, and neither party gave way. At length th
and Reinold made up his mind to a desperate step. He bro
provision wagons. Malagis had rendered such action possibl
of his sleeping powder over part of the camp. As he was ab
looking round, saw that it was strong Olivier, one of the tw
had knocked the powder out of the necromancer's hand, and
sword, the little man caught hold of the bag of hellebore sn
Olivier's face. The hero sneezed and sneezed, and still he s
clutched his prisoner, whom he at length dragged into the en

"A-chew! your Highness!" he said and sneezed; "I bring y
do with him—a-chew!—as you will." Here such an agony of

The emperor thanked and pitied the worthy paladin, and
Monfaucon, where he was to be hanged.

“Sire,” whimpered Malagis, “pray let me live this one mo
food for the last four and twenty hours.”

Meanwhile the paladins and many other knights had ente
those of the poor little man. Seeing that the emperor seemed



MALAGIS CARRIES THE SLEEPING EMPEROR TO MONTALBAN.

“Your Majesty, I swear on my honour that I will not go a
you bear me company.”

Karl then promised to let him have the twenty-four hou
guards.

The lords sat down to supper, and devoted their whole at
while Malagis, curled up in a corner close at hand, appeared
taken to the place that was to serve him as prison, and the
took up their places for the night.

At midnight Malagis had recourse to his knowledge of th
and all within its bounds, save and except himself. Then, st
dropped a few drops of some medicament into Karl's mouth
which he lifted him up, and carried him pickaback to the c
known voice, and great was the astonishment of Reinold wh

"Here is the pledge of peace," said Malagis. "It has cost n
fruit."

The emperor was carried to the best guest-room the castle
for the comfort of the great man.

Karl did not awake till noon. At first he thought he mu
servants about him. The truth dawned upon him gradually, a
Clarissa brought, though he would much rather not have eat
emperor to give up his plans of vengeance, and make peace
that a proud, haughty nature, that could not be bent by ha
liberty, and the emperor went away from Montalban withou

When Reinold re-entered the castle, he found his cousin
Much surprised, he asked what he was doing, and Malagis re

"I am burning all that the noble art of necromancy has tau
useless to such a madman as you. I am now going away into
with them in sackcloth and ashes."

He was as good as his word, for he took his departure soo

When the emperor went back to his camp, he related all h
peace with the heroic brothers, but he refused, saying that h
castle still remained beleaguered, and fortune seemed to
necromancer. The store of provisions grew less every day. I
consideration, thought of a way of escape, and made all ne

set in, he took leave of his weeping wife, and, accompanied
way cautiously and silently through the enemy's lines, and s

Next morning the emperor was told what had happened, a
siege of Montalban to be raised, and started in pursuit of t
themselves so well, and took such wise measures to ensure t
which they were bound.

Death of Baya

The heroes fought as bravely as ever in defence of their
dear ones at Montalban were now free; but however courag
attacks it is impossible to hold out for ever.

In the time of their sorest distress, Aya went to the imp
children. The emperor refused to listen to her, and harshly
again to the charge, and at last Karl said:

"Very well, listen to my offer, and let Reinold accept it if
has done me more harm than any other creature, excepting
their fiefs, if Reinold will give the brute to me, to be killed
accept Bayard's life in expiation of my son's death."

When Aya returned to the castle, and showed the parch
written out in full, Reinold refused to give up his dearest an

"Think of your wife, your children, and your brothers—t
placed there that will be read by future generations: 'He ga
animal.'"

"Mother," cried the hero, and rushing up to Bayard, he f
into tears, threw his arms round its slender neck. The horse

"I cannot do it, mother, I cannot do it," cried Reinold. "Ba

"Very well, my son," she said; "but remember that when a
your mothers heart will break."

"Mother," he answered, in a strange, hollow voice, "have

He then signed the treaty, and Aya returned with it to the

A crowd was assembled on the bridge in Paris, for the

drowned. Kaiser Karl was there also with his paladins.



BAYARD'S DEATH

The noble horse was led to the middle of the bridge, with pushed over the edge, and fell with a splash into the Seine once, twice, thrice.

"That horse is the devil incarnate," cried the emperor furi
you are keeping it alive by any enchantment, it will be the w

With a low cry of terror Aya flung her arms round her so
rose a fourth time, and then, not seeing its master's face, san

The hero felt that all his happiness was gone with Bayar
letters patent entitling him to his fiefs, and breaking his swo

"Lie there with my Bayard, and may God forget to be grac

Then he turned, and fled into the depths of the wild fo
remained for two days and a night, overwhelmed and mad w

After that he went home to Montalban. Meeting a pilgri
money for his grey robes and felt hat.

Lady Clarissa wept when she heard the end of the nob
bitterly, when Reinold took leave of her for ever.

"Who will teach our sons," she cried, "to be true knights a

"Our cousin Count Roland will do so," he answered, "and
eyes, and continued: "Accept no fief from Kaiser Karl. Go
mountains. The tyrant has no power there, for the lands ar
the grave of our Lord, to see whether I may find forgiveness.

Saying this, he tore himself away, and set out at once upo

Reinold went to the Holy Land, where he found a fierce w
his vow. He neither mounted a horse, nor wielded a swor
helped in the taking of Jerusalem. After he had prayed at th
wife and children, nor yet to his brothers, for he had died
cathedral was being built. There he lived a hard, ascetic lif
stop working during the hour of rest in the middle of the da
aroused the anger of the stone-masons, so they rose in a bod
would not keep it, the corpse floated on the surface of the
several miracles were wrought upon those who touched h
emperor, hearing of the wonders that had taken place, ha
body of the saint should be brought to Aix-la-Chapelle (Aa
which was to convey it, than the vehicle moved of its own a
it arrived at Dortmund in Westphalia, where it stopped, th

resting-place. The Reinaldi-Church at Dortmund was built in

The Legend gives the exact date of the miracle, 7th of Jan



II. RO

Siege of Vi

Kaiser Karl had not been married very long. He held a grea the rest, for he expected that this would be the time chosen (Vienne in France), and perhaps also with that of Burgund these, he stooped, and, in fulfilment of ancient custom, wo empress had stuck out her foot, which he involuntarily touch

"He must have drunk too much Burgundy before he wo formerly disdained. Wine teaches humility," murmured the c

Gerhart sprang to his feet, his cheeks flushing with an emperor told him that he could not have the fief of Burgun was strongly against it. The count took his leave with a lo Arrived there, he called out his troops, and sent to ask l sovereign. He knew that the emperor's heart would hencefo widowed duchess of Burgundy whose proffered love he had

The brothers took the field at the head of a great army. W a bold warrior, and his daughter Auda, who was marvellousl

Karl besieged the stronghold on the river Rhone where th for it was defended by brave men, rocks, and river. Som

sometimes part of the garrison would make an attack on tl
now and then accompany her friends dressed in full armou
she found that her opponent was none other than strong R
took her prisoner. Her brother Olivier, seeing what had ha
engaged in single combat, Auda made good her escape, a
joined by the rest of the party. The siege continued. The L
stones on the heads of those warriors who came within rea
seeing the maiden, asked her name and parentage. When sh
was Count Roland, a nephew of the emperor, he went on to
though it were at the cost of his life. At this moment Oliv
challenged him to single combat on an island in the Rhone.

The heroes and their horses were ferried over the river
displayed the most heroic valour. At length, when evenin
coming between them, forced them apart. An angel wrapped

“Wherefore do you fight, Christian against Christian? W
reconciled in the name of the Saviour who died upon the
against the adversaries of the true faith.”

The angel then waved a palm branch as a sign of farewell,

The two men exchanged a hearty shake of the hand, an
them. Before they separated, Olivier had promised to use h
had given his word to fight no more against Vienne, and its

Now the emperor was very fond of hunting, and used to
search of game. On one such occasion he and his compan
under the leadership of Olivier. At one moment it seemed a
protected him with his shield. When the combat was over, th
was so touched and pleased with the noble and generous dis
peace, but to appoint Olivier one of his paladins, to forgive

There was great joy in Vienne and all the neighbouring co
faces were everywhere to be seen, and happiest of all was p
for the public betrothal of Roland and Auda. Great prepara
one.

While the heroes were sitting at the feast in the royal te
brought the sad news that the Moorish king Eigoland had c

Gascony, and laid waste the country with fire and sword.

"That is good news," said brave Roland, "for an angel a against the infidel."

"It is bad news," answered the emperor, "for the Moor is a his back. Listen, noble knights, and I will tell you what hap brothers, the sons of cunning Bertha, drove me out of my Saragossa. With the help of brave Diebolt, I regained my emperor in Rome. One night St. James, the apostle, appeare was a yearly pilgrimage, from the yoke of the infidel. I ol where the apostle lies buried. There I learnt that Eigola Pampeluna. I marched back at once, and met the Moorish Africans fought like very devils. They broke through our brother-in-law, and your father, nephew Roland, threw hims heroes, and defeated the enemy. But before the victory was on both sides was so great that either party retreated on t seems to have come back at the head of a larger army than for home and faith, for on this crisis will depend whether Ch

"I think this much is certain," said Roland: "we shall co though he fell at Pampeluna? The Lord would not deny hi blood. Here, or there, ye Frankish men, what does it matter

As he spoke, his eyes shone with enthusiasm.

"And what is to become of me," whispered Auda, "if you c

"You are the angel that shall give me the palm, either h and ladies he gave her the kiss of affiance.

GAN

Next day they marched to meet the enemy, whom they sa watered by the Dordone (Dordogne). The morning after th Moors. Roland, Olivier, Ogier, Archbishop Turpin, and the c again against the foe. At night-fall, and not till then, di Pampeluna, where they found more troops that had just a avenge the defeat they had sustained, and they were sure t skill, and their prophet.

Karl did not at once follow the fugitives. He waited for re
heathen, had formerly aided him. He sent messengers to
murdered them, and had joined the Moors. Then the emper
tidings he had had, asked them whether they advised
overwhelming.

"Let us go forward," cried brave Roland; "before us lie two

The rest agreed with him, and the horns sounded to battle
on either side, and each party fought with a desperate valo
the Moors took flight.

The emperor reduced the country to obedience to his rule
station and determined to defend the town alone until the a
had promised to send to his aid. Karl, remembering his
greatest forbearance. He therefore sent Ganelon, one of
Marsilio's life should be spared if he would be baptized, and
decline the honour of carrying this message; but he knew the

The king received the ambassador with all kindness, list
think the matter over, and consult his friends. Meanwhil
treasures. When he saw that the sight of these things had h
baggage-horse loads of gold, three of silver, and three of
from him, and save him from becoming a Frankish vassal.
double the reward, he even promised to detain a division
pretext of guarding the country, and then to deliver them
each of the contracting parties swore to keep his share of the

Marsilio, who thought little of bloodshed, did not hesitate
good faith, which therefore was not doubted. Ganelon spok
for the future; and then, when he had succeeded in turning
France with his whole army in the belief that he now posse
leave Roland and the other paladins behind at the head of
before it, and what he advised was done. He alone of all th
and the other ten remained with six thousand chosen warrio

At Ronceval (

The heroes spent one quiet day after the army had gone.

the approach of a large army, so they got ready for the fig
two high mountains, which he determined to defend. The
Franks before they had reached the end of the pass.

"Blow your horn," said Olivier, "the emperor will hear you

Roland gazed at his great horn, Olifant, which was hangin
blown by one who understood how to sound it, would send i

"Look, faithful friend," said the hero, "I was given this ho
then swore only to blow the horn in case of utmost need. W
make these heathen bite the dust. Ha! what do I see? Look
has betrayed us for much red gold, but we will fight for the
do battle for our holy Faith!"

The heroes and their men rushed on to meet the Moorish
courage; but after a while fell back, and fled, pursued by the

When the heroes had recalled their little army from the pu
sat very long, they were startled by a shout behind them o
beating of drums. A larger army than that which they had al
at its head.

Roland prepared for battle. He sent Count Walter to gu
Balduin, brave Olivier, the bold Archbishop Turpin, and the

The battle raged with intensest fury round the leaders. Wi
at Marsilio, but next moment his horse was killed beneath
Moors turned and fled. He looked round, and could see no
blew a mighty blast. About a hundred men-at-arms appea
Olivier, Balduin, Archbishop Turpin, and others of the heroe

"Your horn has a goodly sound, and carries far, friend Ro
return and help us. It will be high time, in sooth; for see
renew the attack."

"Up, ye faithful of the Lord," cried Roland; "close your ran

The hero mounted an Arab horse he had caught a mom
spears were hurtling through the air, and swords were clash
Christian force; but fight as they might, the Franks were s
prevail. Olivier fell defending his friend and brother-in-arm

once more retreated in fear, and the hero was too weary to
he, bleeding from many wounds, and feeling that his end w
the ground at the foot of a rock. Then, raising his eyes to hea

"Lord, give me grace in Thy sight. Receive, if so be that Th

So saying, he held up his gauntlet; a soft breeze passed ov
it away. The hero then lifted his sword Durindart, and trie
hands of the Moors. But the marble rock was split by the l
horn for the third time. The worthy Archbishop Turpin lim
faithful squire Thiedrich, and bold Walter, who had defend
slain.

Time passed slowly with the wounded men. At last they
armour. Kaiser Karl had come back to their assistance. But
peace. His faithful squire told the emperor, with tears in his
master's soul. Then he went on to tell of Marsilio's faithlessn
suspicion they all felt that Ganelon had betrayed them into t

"You were right there," said the emperor; "the traitor dec
Roland's horn, but Ganelon dissuaded me, saying that my ne

The bodies of the Frankish soldiers were buried, while
amongst whom were Turpin, Roland, Olivier, and Walter,
Ganelon was at the same time arrested and bound.

These things done, the emperor marched against the M
Caliph Baligant of Babylon with hosts of followers. The batt
and was then decided in favour of the Franks. Baligant di
Spain to the conqueror.

The emperor returned to France. Halt was made by the
heroes were interred at Blaive, after which the march to Par
it was over, Kaiser Karl set out for Aix, where Ganelon was
prove his innocence by single combat against Thiedrich, Ro
imprisonment, he was allowed to choose any one he liked
famous swordsmen of his day; but that availed him nothi
Ganelon was then sentenced to be torn in pieces by wild hor

Soon after this, fair Auda came to Aix in search of her bet
so they referred her to the emperor, and he told her with tea

"Dead," she said; "Roland dead!"

With these words she sank lifeless to the ground, so they Blaive.





III. WILLIAM

The Inh

Count Henry of Narbonne, who was both a good man and a He was held in much esteem by the emperor, because of his paternal estates. After a time he withdrew to his own ca education of his seven sons, and several daughters. Years p their father called them to him, and said that he had a story

"You must know," he said, "that once, long ago, I sank ex with wounds. The enemy rushed up to slay me, but a faithfu help arrived, he sank severely wounded on the blooming he care and attention was lavished on us. I got better, but he troubled about the fate of his little son, whom he would

comforted the man who had given his life for me, by telling up fit for the trust, he should be my heir, whether I had chi warrior, and I am proud to call him my pupil. Now, my s preserver, or do you desire to share my estate amongst you?

Then one of the sons, named William, answered for the their father should break his word to his faithful squire.

"Not beggars," cried the Countess Irmschart. "All that I br endowed you with a priceless inheritance; namely, his piety lessons in knightliness he has given you. This is an inheritan

"Well, my sons," continued the count, "you may go to t there, if you are true to the lessons you have learnt in your y

The young warriors followed their father's advice. They sake, and then for their own. They fought against the Moo death of the heroes at Ronceval. After their return from considerable fiefs. William, who enjoyed the special favou coast of France. He showed himself a vigilant warden of the with his troopers to beat them back, and sometimes even sei

After the death of Kaiser Karl, surnamed the Great, his so new ruler was to go about the country, and see in what conc Count William lived with his youngest sister. Ludwig was so love with her, and soon afterwards married her. This circ enabled him to keep up a larger army, and do what he other

Captivity an

Peace lasted for a long time under the wise rule of Count the land, under the lead of the powerful Emirs Terreman children of the desert, and strove to chase them from the c last surrounded by the Moors, and carried off a prisoner t fortune of war.

Arrived at Valencia, the count was chained up in a dark a wife, Arabella, during her husband's absence on a plunderi the prisoner on bread and water, and forbade her on any a return to find him willing to embrace the Mahommedan reli

For some time Arabella did as her husband had desired curious to see what the Frankish prisoner was like. So she n saw that William was a goodly man, and felt sorry for him. look so gentle and like an angel.

The weeks passed quickly. Arabella tried to teach the co entreating him to remember that he had only to become a side, told her about God and Christ, and explained to her th heart. She visited him again and again, thought over his t confessed that she wished to become a Christian. She and determined to fly to King Ludwig.

By the help of an old and faithful servant, Arabella hired captain, on learning that he was to steer for the coast of F instant's hesitation, flung him overboard. He then threatene looked so terrible with his drawn sword and stern face, that

Meanwhile Tibalt returned from his raid, and learnt all th embarked without loss of time, and set sail in pursuit of the Arabella landed and took refuge in the citadel.

Tibalt vainly tried to take the place by storm, and had at his voyage.

Ludwig invited Count William and Arabella to his court, him and his queen. Every one admired the Moorish lady's b even than the queen herself. This roused the queen's jealou marked coldness.

Count William and his bride went on to Avignon, whe received into the Christian Church. She was given the name the house of Narbonne. Ludwig was present at the marriage,

A few days after this, William sent his wife home to O object of recovering Rome and the States of the Church for fighting; and when Leo was once more master of the imp crowning him emperor in the room of his great father.

When the coronation feast was over, the warriors all retu happily at Orange, and, as they had no children, William a brought him up as his heir. The boy Vivian (or Vivianz)

excellence.

More F

As it happened, Vivian was to have a chance of winning They swept over Aquitaine in no time, and seemed as thou took leave of his wife, and, accompanied by young Vivian a back the bold invaders.

The armies met on the plain of Alischanz (Alicon). “Mac Denys!” on the other.

The battle began, and raged for hours; young Vivian fo avenged his fall. He was insensible for some time, and wher battle-field surrounded by the bodies of the slain. He was heard. A shining angel came down from heaven, and supp where he quenched his raging thirst. Before finally disappea

“The good town of Orange and kind Gyburg are in danger

The young man fainted again when he heard these words. and had just strength enough to repeat the warning given hi



WILLIAM OF ORANGE AND HIS DYING NEP

The count considered what was to be done. He had lost s
had cut his way through the enemy's ranks; and then, co
bloody track until he found him. The battle was now at an e
His horse was so severely wounded that he had to lead it by
and toilsome walk. At daybreak he met a Moorish comman
but with the first blow he clove the emir to the saddle, and
he slipped the emir's dress over his armour, and, mounting
way in safety to the castle gate, which opened in time to
accoutrements of his wounded war-horse, for the faithful bea

The besiegers tried again and again to storm the castle, b
After a time, the inmates of the castle suffered so much from
the Moorish hosts to bring back reinforcements and provisi
at all hazards, and then, donning the garments he had taken

He made his way through the enemy's lines, and reached
of the guard, and ordered to instant death as a Moorish infi
Frank; in vain he told him his name and rank; neither the ca
danger of being torn in pieces by the excited populace. Fort

the head of an armed force, and, on seeing William, at on
house. The count would have nothing to eat but bread an
fasting. Having rested for an hour or two, he set out again o

Ludwig received him coldly, and his sister was still mor
aught any one knew, the Moorish woman might have
Christianity, and want to return to her own people. Ludwi
William was strong enough to help himself.

Day after day passed, and nothing was done. Meanwhile t
to ask for help against the Moors; and the aged count of N
their help in the good work. When they heard how ill W
emperor, and warned him that if he did not support his vass
suzerainty. Then, turning to his daughter, he told her plainl
curse if she did not forget her foolish rancour and do her d
at once given to call out a great army, which assembled in a

On hearing of the approach of a Frankish host, the Moo
behind. These William gladly seized for the use of the im
garret to cellar, and the cooks had hard work to provide f
young fellow, a Moor by birth, who had been stolen fron
William thought from his appearance that he must be of no
called him nothing but Jack Dunderhead. While he was a
Princess Alice from a wolf. The only reward he asked of her
But when he was going to the wars with the other officers o
a farewell gift. After his arrival at Orange, William's attent
youth, and the masterly fashion in which he handled his q
from servitude, took him to the Lady Gyburg, and desired h
warrior. Rennewart, for that was his real name, was so grate
the death. And, as he turned to leave the room, the countess

"Now, at length, I can show that I am of royal lineage, an
have forgotten your long-lost son, he has become a Frank,
country."

These words revealed to Gyburg that Rennewart was her
After this joyful recognition, he went out in full armour,
defence. He joined the rest of the forces and marched with t

The battle began, and Rennewart showed himself so goo

even attacked and boarded some of the Moorish ships, fre
getting them to join him, drove the Moors overboard, and, ta

Among the prisoners taken was the Moorish commande
defeat, he was astonished at the kindness with which he wa
so much harm. But he soon made friends with them, and wa

A few days later William and Gyburg went with the victo
met with a hearty reception, and the count of Orange was cr
and district of Nismes. The emperor then rewarded all the
men-at-arms, and a banquet to the nobles.

While the heroes were enjoying the good things provide
hero Rennewart sat silent and absorbed, till her daughter Al
her countenance, the royal maiden blushed, and her hand t
could have met before, and took the first opportunity of
brother's story, and informed the empress that Rennewart
prince, in the guise of a scullion, saved the princess's life. A
the very day of their betrothal messengers arrived bringing r

William, who was now duke of Aquitaine and count of
them from dangers without and within, and listened to all
Gyburg helped him in all ways that a woman might. Togeth
God was with them. When they were both stricken in year
showing him a desert place high up in the mountains, desi
might live, and give shelter to any travellers who had lost
the snow, and save them from a dreadful death. Next day
pointed out, and, having found it, built the monastery. He a
good to all; then they withdrew into solitary cells to prepa
were wrought at their graves, that the people believed they



TITUREL SEES THE HOLY GRAIL.

LEGENDS OF KING ARTH

TITU

HIS CALL T

At the time when the bold hero Vespasian was called away
rich man of Cappadocia, named Parille, or as the Romans ca
and wise of counsel in times of peace, so the emperor gave
sons, grandsons, and later descendants. One of these, Tituris
children. The knight was much distressed at the thought tha
he was quite elderly, a soothsayer came to the castle, and a
evening, when he was sitting alone with his guest, the knigh
told him that he ought to make a pilgrimage to the church
altar. Titurisone followed the wise man's advice, and he an

the boy grew up, he showed rare gifts of mind, great piety,
his baptism, a name that soon became known throughout th

When the boy grew to man's estate, he went with his fat
prowess, that his father began to praise him, and prophesy
had only done his duty like others.

When the victorious army returned home, Titurel was no
native place. Arrived there, he did not go first in search o
robes of a penitent. He approached the altar bare-foot, an
prayed for God's blessing on all his undertakings, he rose fr
his mother.

Titurel sometimes took part in the crusade against the Sa
noised abroad, and his name was held in honour by Christia

Many years passed on. Titurisone and his wife both died,
outward fortunes made no difference in Titurel—he remain
more to give away to the poor and needy, that was the only

One beautiful spring morning he went out to walk in the
looked about him. Flowers filled the air with their perfume,
among the fresh green leaves. He felt full of peace and joy;
in the songs of the birds, the rustle of the foliage, and the
alone was visible. He was surprised to see it coming as if to
by the wind. At last it sank to the earth before him, and
melodious voice like the sound of the organ in church.

"Hail, chosen hero of the Most High! The Lord hath calle
Set thy house in order, and obey the voice of God."

The angel stepped back, the cloud closed round him like a

Titurel went home in a state of ecstasy. He divided his w
after which he returned fully armed to the place where the
sky, and this time it was fringed with the gold of sunshine
pilgrimage. He went on and on through vast solitudes. A
mountain, the sides of which seemed too steep to climb. Bu
up precipitous rocks, past great abysses that made him dizz
weary he could hardly drag one foot after the other, and
seemed to speak to him encouragingly at such moments of

reached the top of the mountain. He saw a bright light befo
Beneath it knelt a number of knights in shining armour. Seei

“Hail to thee, chosen hero, called to be guardian of the ho

He did not answer, his eyes were fixed on the sacred vess
by a stand of chased gold. Lost in the wondrous sight, he pra

And in good truth Titurel was worthy of his high calling
prevented any infidels from approaching the holy mountain
earth. So Titurel determined to build a castle and temple on

Building o

When the grass, ferns, and stones were cleared away, it w
entire onyx of enormous size. This was flattened into a floo
built. Now came the more important task of rearing the te
would be most fitting.

One morning when Titurel awoke, he prayed that he migl
he went out he saw the entire ground-plan clearly marked
that were wanted, ready piled up in huge stacks. So the
worked all night. It was wonderful how quickly the walls r
had seventy-two octagon choirs, every two of which suppo
and openings with pointed arches. The topmost point of th
surmounted by a golden eagle with outstretched wings. W
about the pillars, forming bowers, on whose branches birds
was a glowing carbuncle that turned night into day; and th
was to be seen. The sun, moon, and stars placed there by th
the heavens.

In the wide inner space of the great temple a second and
beautiful. This was the place intended for the Sangreal, shou

And now the work was finished. The hour of consecrati
hymn, and a chorus of angels joined in: “Glory to God on hi
sweet perfume filled the air, the sacred vessel descended a
solemn silence reigned in the mighty building. Then the inv
Zion! Praise Him, ye faithful, and make known His holy na
complete. Titurel did not move for some time after the othe

touch the vessel, for he had not been told to do so.

The building had taken thirty years to complete. After the wafer from the holy sacrament in its bill. It dropped the wa powers of the Grail, which provided food for the knights wh hands of the unbelievers who sometimes attacked them.

His Marriage a

Time passed on, and Titurel was four hundred years old, l forty. One evening when he entered the sanctuary and turn him. Drawing near, that he might read the letters of fire in take a wife, so that the chosen race might not die out of the written, and said that he must obey. With one accord, all f the most worthy maiden to be his wife. The wooing was do deaf to the call. The marriage took place, and on the same always refused before out of humility. Two children were l daughter called Richoude after her mother. Twenty years lat except for his children, to whom he was devoted.

Richoude, who was very lovely, married a king whose r Clarissa, daughter of the king of Granada; by her he had fiv by name, and three daughters, Herzeleide, Joisiane, and Rep

Titurel was no longer able to bear the weight of his grandchildren. One day when he went, as he often did, to g rim of the vessel, "Frimutel shall be king." The old man's hea the young heroes who served the Sangreal, around him, a granddaughter Joisiane to place the floating Grail upon the then the old man put the crown on his son's head, and blesse

Titurel lived on, and saw many joyful and many sorrowfu died at the birth of her babe Sigune,

Who fairer was than flowers in lusty May,
That ope their dewy cups to dawning day.

Her sister Herzeleide took the child, and brought it up wit she lost her husband, and had to fly with her son Percival, l

But worse things than this were yet to happen. Frimutel tho
it, and went out to seek excitement in the world. He died
son Amfortas was crowned his successor, in obedience to t
inherited the wild blood and roving spirit of his father; and
went out into the world in search of love and fame. At lengt
wound caused by a poisoned spear.

One day, while Sir Titurel knelt in the sanctuary praying f
Grail appearing to him once in every seven days, he suddenl

“Murmur not, good old man; endure the load of others’ s
ask, before nightfall, of the beginning and end of this tale o
the new-comer shall be king in his stead.”

Again and again Titurel read the mysterious words, and a
the words, “murmur not; endure,” shone brighter than befo
God.



KING ARTHUR AND HIS ROUND TABLE.

PERC

JOURNEY TO A

When Queen Herzeleide had to fly from home with her little
she possessed in an out-of-the-way district, and devoted he

knightly deeds, for she feared lest, when he was grown up, h
tournament or feud. Notwithstanding this, young Percival gr

One day, as he was coming home from hunting, he met s
One of them asked him a question, which Percival answe
strange garments those were that he and his companions w
and answered the lad's questions very kindly, adding, "If yo
to King Arthur's court, and there, if you are worthy, you ma

Percival could not forget what he had heard and seen. He
dreaming of swords, knighthood, and battle. Herzeleide ask
his sorrow, her heart was filled with terror lest, inheriting l
fate. At length she gave way to the lad's entreaties, and let h

Percival felt the parting with his mother very much; but
joy of meeting again soon thrust the sorrow of parting into t

Lost in such reflections, he came to a meadow in which
which a beautiful woman lay asleep. She was richly dres
ornaments on her arms, neck, and fingers. He thought, as h
lips of the sleeping beauty; but, as he did so, she awoke, and

"Don't be angry," he said, throwing himself at her feet. "I
and you are more beautiful than my mother."

The lady gazed at him in astonishment, and listened to his
a knight, and doing great deeds thereafter. Suddenly a horn

"That is my husband," cried the lady; "quick, boy, get awa

"Oh, I am not afraid," he said. "Look at my quiver; it is qu
of your bracelets as a sign that you are not angry with me."

As he spoke, he slipped the bracelet off her arm, left the te

Shortly after this Lord Orilus, the lady's husband, appeare
had happened, he fell into a passion, and swore that he w
though he set out at once in pursuit, he could see nothing of

Meanwhile Percival continued his journey. That night he
easy pace. As he was passing under a rock, he saw a maide
she bent over a dead man, whose head lay in her lap. Perc
would avenge the death of the murdered man, for murdered

that she was his cousin Sigune, and that the dead man was trying to gratify a silly wish of hers—a wish she had no soo and had wanted to have it again. That was the cause of all h

"He was a real hero," she continued, "and one of the kı governor of her wasted lands. He conquered the robber ho: Lord of Cumberland, from his horse, so that he only escapec he promised to get me back the dog, he challenged Orilus to victory to be the setter that Lord Orilus had caught, and kep the time of meeting was put off for a while, because Orilus Jeschute, fearing for the life of her husband, sent me back t so we set out together to go to the sanctuary of the Holy Gra met Orilus and his wife, and in spite of all the entreaties o Orilus recovered from the stunning fall; but my dear love—c

"Be comforted, cousin," said Percival, "I will go to King knight, and to take care of you. Then I will go and seek out

He then took leave of Sigune, and went on his way. Comi should find King Arthur's court. The man answered that he Percival gave him the gold bracelet he had taken from the l and afterwards put him in the right road.

Arrived at Nantes, the first person he met was a red-haire spoke to him courteously, and asked for the loan of his hors and ask for knighthood at his hands. But the stranger laughe to carry my message of defiance."

"Here," he continued, "take this cup to the king as a tok deadly combat. You see that I cannot lend you my horse an be able to pick and choose amongst the armour and horses o

Indignant at the knight's refusal, Percival rode on in silen the people all laughed at his appearance, the very boys poin enough. The ribbons of his striped cap fluttered in the b shabby, and his sorry nag limped with fatigue. At length a s chid them for their discourtesy to a stranger. The young l Arthur to whom he was the bearer of a message. Iwanet a palace. On entering the open hall where the king was seate man turned to his companion in amazement, saying:

"Are there so many Arthurs? My mother only told me of o

The squire smiled as he replied that there was indeed or beginning to turn grey, and who wore the crown on his heac

Percival now walked up the hall, and bowing to the king the king would use his power and give him the red knight's l

"The boy would have the bear-skin before the hunter has give you the things you ask for, if you can get possession of

"Thank you, sire," answered Percival, "I shall need your g his leave.

When he returned to the red knight, he told him all that h had given him. The knight upon this rapped him so shrewdl his nag. He soon recovered, however, and attacked the knig He then tried to take off his armour, but in vain. Fortuna difficulty offered to help him. Percival was soon arrayed in t other clothes as they had been made by his mother. This d the red knight's charger, and rode away, he knew not whithe

After he had ridden a long way he came to the castle of G asked the youth to come in and spend the night under his ro so taken with his host's kindly manner, that before the eveni adventures since he had left her. Gurnemann persuaded the how to become a true knight and hero.

"Do not always have your mother's name upon your lips, faithfully in your heart, and you will please her more than l one maiden only, not play at love with many women. He s has conquered an enemy he should show mercy; and when h is a hero's glory, and such death is better than a dishonoured

With these and other words of wisdom the old man strove fitting clothes, telling him it was no disrespect to his moth provided him. Time passed on, and Percival proved such an been his own son.

At last he told the youth that the time had come for hin innocence and right, for Queen Konduiramur was hard pres

seneschal Kingram. Percival was nothing loth, and at once p

Arrived at Belripar, which stood on the sea at the mouth horse swimming at his side. Though artillery frowned fron password given him by Gurnemann, and was conducted in once offered her his services. She entreated him to have not be persuaded to abandon her. It almost seemed as though l some ships laden with provisions managed to run the block he unhorsed and took prisoner the seneschal Kingram, who Arthur of his defeat at the hands of the red knight. The same

Peace was now restored. The people were all devoted to rejoiced to hear that he was about to marry the queen.

The wedding took place with great pomp and ceremony. and that was that his mother was not there to share his joy that he ought to go and fetch his mother to Belripar. So Perc

Quest of

He knew in which direction to go to his mother, but not t lost his way several times. One day he came to a great lak boat, fishing. The man was richly dressed, but pale and sa about for himself and his tired horse, and was told that if he a castle, where he would be kindly received. He started in th at nightfall, after a long and toilsome search. There he met v provided for him "by Queen Repanse's orders," that he was the hall, which was brilliantly lighted. Four hundred knights which was laid for four. They all sat grave and silent, as bowed, and a ray of joy passed over each woeful countenanc

The master of the house, who much resembled the fishern fire, wrapped in sables, and was apparently suffering from sc

The deep silence that reigned in the hall was at length bro sit down beside him, telling him that he had been long exp workmanship. The young knight was filled with astonishme with blood, with which he walked round the room in silenc strange ceremony, and also how his arrival had come

unwarrantably curious. While thus thinking, the door open
in, two and two, with a velvet cushion embroidered with
came Queen Repanse bearing a costly vessel, whose radiance

"The holy Grail," Percival heard whispered by one voice
much awed by the strangeness and solemnity of all he saw.

The maidens withdrew, and the squires and pages of the
an endless supply of the costliest dishes and wines, which t
only ate of one dish, and but a small quantity of that. Pe
stillness and sadness mean?

When the meal was at an end, the lord of the castle dra
eagerly at his guest, and then retired with a deep sigh. Serv
Before leaving the hall they opened the door of a room in
handsome face was framed in a coronal of white curls. His
trying to speak. The servants closed the door again, and led

When he entered the room he looked about him, and at
tapestry, that arrested his attention. It was the picture of a
like the lord of the castle in appearance, was sinking to the
weapon that had been carried round the hall. Much as he c
questions till the following morning, though the servant
deliverance was looked for at his hands; and they went away

His sleep was disturbed by bad dreams, and he awoke nex
beside his bed; but no one came to help him. He got up and
that led out to the ramparts, where his horse stood saddled
bridge than it was drawn up behind him, and a voice called

"Accursed of God, thou that wast chosen to do a great wor
way till it leads thee down to hell."

The hero turned, and looked back at the castle: a face
battlements, and then disappeared. Percival put spurs to h
bleak, inhospitable country, and at nightfall reached a soli
quiet room. A woman crouched on the floor praying. She
about her face and neck. Startled by his entrance, she rose sl

"What, you?" she said, "Herzeleide's wretched son! What
I have laid it in this chest. Here I must kneel and pray, and d

“Good heavens!” said the hero to himself, “it is Sigune; bu

The unhappy woman stared at him for some time in silen you are lost for ever. You were permitted to look upon the h of freeing the poor sufferer from his pain. Do not longer pol curse overtake you.”

She stood before him like an angry prophetess. A feeling of him, and he staggered out of her presence and into the n sank on the ground, and found relief from his troubles in a s

The sun was high in the heavens when he awoke. His fait without knowing or caring where he went. As evening car which he thankfully accepted. Next day, when he resumed occurred; and came to the conclusion that he ought to retu unconsciously. But he could not find the way to it. He aske the holy Grail was to be seen: but every one took him for leading a woman in chains. He at once recognised the bea asleep. She looked at him in silent entreaty, so he felt him woman go, but was answered with a scornful laugh. Upon Percival was victorious. As he was about to slay his fallen ar and refrained. Leaving the man lying on the ground, he turn fallen knight had regained his senses, and Percival let him g all courtesy, and to go to King Arthur’s court and say that Percival learned that his opponent was Sir Orilus, and that t he had persecuted out of groundless jealousy. Percival solem and thus he brought about a sincere reconciliation.

The hero continued his search for the holy Grail, but a winter’s storm, yet never seemed to get nearer the goal. O him to come back to court with him, and see the king, a consented, hoping, as he did so, to learn something from Art

Sir Gawain sent a squire on to announce the red knigh accompanied by his heroes and many of the townsfolks, for had been heard and of whom so little was known. On the fo hand the sign of knighthood, and was enrolled a member of

Whilst the heralds were yet proclaiming the new knight’s miserable nag. She threw back her veil on approaching the

and grey, like a withered leaf, and her eyes glowed like burn

"It is the witch Kundrie, the messenger of the Sangreal," c

"It is even she," said the woman, "and she comes to cry
man I shall name to remain in their midst. Percival is unwo
highest dignity, and has wickedly neglected to end the pain
Arthur and his heroes, if the unhallowed presence of the dis

Every eye was fixed now on the prophetess, and now u
slipped quietly out of the assemblage, and, mounting his h
there was only one who took his part, and that was Gawa
depart on the word of a hawk-nosed witch. Upon this Kundr

"Thou wretch, the curse hath fallen upon thee too. Go
grandmother, thy mother, and sister, and other noble ladies

Gawain turned, and went away without a word. He mount

Wherever the hero went, he found people who told him tl
men who had fought with him and whom he had conquere
follow Percival until he lost all trace of him in the far East.
his great deeds, but himself he could not find.

Sir Gawain thought the matter over carefully, and made u
out the holy Grail, for which he also sought.

As he rode along, he met a knight whom Percival had wo
was called, felt too sore about his defeat to be able to acce
when his wounds were healed. Before the hero had gone n
both the challenge and the holy Grail, and even the red knig
dark hair fell down her neck in curls, and her eyes gle
conversation with her. Finding her as wise and witty as she
him. He persisted, so she said that if he would find favour i
her white palfrey.

He went to the garden gate, and seeing an elderly man s
palfrey. The man shook his head sadly as he answered:

"Ah my friend, take care. That lady is the Duchess Orgu
knight, and for whose sake the great King Amfortas faced
Throw off her bonds while yet you can. Look, there is your h

The warning was vain: a mere waste of words. It was as
He was powerless in her hands. He brought her the palfrey,
help from him in mounting, followed her with passive obe
her sweet sake, and every now and then, he could not h
otherwise there would have been none. Yet he was always v
love, who was now pleased to allow him to ride beside her.

At length they reached a hill-top from which they had an
perched on the top of a high rock, and overshadowed by a
belonged to Gramoflans, her mortal enemy, and the man wh
me a spray of the magic tree yonder, and conquer Gramofla
your—your faithful wife."

The knight would have fought the prince of darkness hi
moment's hesitation, and rode away in the direction of th
reached the tree. He pulled a small branch, and tried to we
angry tones:

"What are you doing there, rash youth? How dare you t
knight of the Round Table. Your father slew my father lon
eight days time before Klinschor's magic castle. There sha
death. You may bring as many men, or more, if you like."
entered his castle.

Gawain brought the wreath to his lady, who received it c
way in silence; he accompanying her wherever she chose to
of which, the duchess said, was Logreis, her father's ance
which the great magician, Klinschor, kept the noble dame
with heavy chains. She herself, she added, had only bou
inherited from her father. Scarcely had she uttered these w
defend himself. Orgueilleuse withdrew, reminding Gawain
adversary, the knight got into the ferry-boat, that had jus
water, and went across. That night he lodged with the ferry
of the great doings of a valiant knight clad in red armour.



GAWAIN BREAKS THE SPELL IN KLINSCHOR'S

As darkness came on, Gawain went to the window, and
castle, at each of which a sad female face appeared. The wo
early childhood to grey old age. Sir Gawain turned wrathful
and set the wretched ladies free; but the ferryman bade him
but was learned in the black art. Sir Gawain, however, was n

He mounted his horse early next morning, and set ou
mysterious-looking before him. He was admitted into the co
making any difficulty. The building seemed totally deserted
woman. He wandered from room to room lost in astonishm
was spread, and as he felt tired, he thought he would lie d

retreated as he advanced, and he could not get in. Render
instant was assailed by a perfect storm of arrows, lances, j
well as he could. Had he not been dressed in full armour
received many a wound.

The terrible hail of weapons ceased as suddenly as it had
broken by the heavy tramp of a peasant, who entered the r
The man was of enormous size, and his voice was deep and

"Quiet, Leo," he said, "I am going to break that fellow's
amazement, "still alive, and in full armour! Nay then, go at
as his legs would carry him.

The lion sprang upon the hero, and tried to tear him with
mingled rage and pain, for Gawain had cut off one of its fo
lion with such hearty good will that he finally killed it; but
that he sank fainting on its carcase.

When he came to himself again he found a number of
Amongst them were his grandmother, his mother, and his s
soon as Gawain had a little recovered from his fatigue, he s
him to come and witness the combat that was to take place l

Arthur came, and Sir Gawain felt that his cup of happines
to his uncle.

At length the wished-for day of combat dawned. A knigl
Gawain rode forward to meet him. Their swords flashed, and
The king and the ladies drew nearer that they might the b
knight had the best of the fight. Gawain's strength to parr
maiden darted from amongst the spectators, and cried,—

"Noble knight, spare my brother Gawain, he is yet weak fr

"Gawain!" echoed the stranger, raising his visor, and displ

The meeting of the friends was right joyful, and while
reconciliation and friendship with the other two. This was G
Itonie. But Gawain knew too well what depended on their co
by defeating this man, whom she hated. He laid his hand up
near and stopped him. He promised on his word of honour

nephew. Then sending for the lady, he took her apart and ta
her that her anger left her, and she forgave her foe.

A few days afterwards two marriages were solemnized a
ensure the general happiness. Sir Percival was at the same t
was not happy. He could not forget. He heard as distinctly a
he always saw the face of the sufferer Amfortas, the Sangre
mother. He could not bear it, so he slipped quietly away wi
his friends but increased his grief.

He rode away, a feeling of almost despair possessing him
to right the wrong he had done so unconsciously?

PERCIVAL, TREVREZ

Summer and autumn were gone, and the ground was cov
of a recluse at a little distance. He was half frozen with col
drag himself with difficulty to the door. A tall and stately, l
to come in, while he attended to his horse.

The hermit gave him food, and spread a bed of moss for h
He saw a sword with a richly carved hilt, inlaid with gold, l
hermit sighed as he answered that it had belonged to him a
forgot the holy Grail, the care of which had been committed

"For, stranger," he continued, "you must know that I am
like him, I devoted my life to the pursuit of fleeting pleasur
the unspeakable pain that he still endures, I laid aside my sw
do penance for my own sins, and perhaps even redeem my
that was chosen by God to save him neglected to do it, a
glorious place that was prepared for him."

"I am he who sinned so deeply, yet unconsciously," crie
punishes the sin of ignorance with such a curse?"

"So you are Percival, the son of my sister Herzeleide," s
redemption, for you did not know the All-merciful, who or
Hearken to me, and I will unfold the wondrous goodness a
learn to endure and to trust."

Trevrezent then proceeded to tell his nephew of God's de
and death of Christ, and to show him what lessons might be
died of sorrow not long after his departure, and that in dyi
now seek the Sangreal with a pure heart and humble mind,
mercy was without end.

The hero remained for some days with his uncle, who st
before him.

At last, taking leave of Trevrezent, he departed and journ
mountain. One day he met a knight who insisted on fightin
sword broke, and he exclaimed that if he had had his father
trick. The stranger then questioned him about Gamuret, and

"Then you and I are brothers, for when Gamuret was in
returned home and wedded your mother. I was brought up
name is Feirefiss."

So saying he opened his visor and showed Percival a dark,

The brothers embraced with great affection, and Percival s

"The sword that Amfortas the sufferer gave me would n
heard my prayers. And—but was I blind?—surely I know thi
road to the holy mountain. Come, brother, follow me up th
us."

Both heroes set out on their toilsome road with a stout he
that the sun was about to set before they reached the castle.
their horses—which they had been obliged to lead most of t
conducted straight to the hall, which was brilliantly lighted
usual places. The squire then came in with the bleeding la
cushion, stand, etc., and lastly, by the fair virgin, Queen Rep

"Merciful Father, and our sweet Lord and Saviour," w
redemption."

And it seemed to him that an angel spoke in his ear the
knew what to do. Going up to Amfortas he said:

"What ails you, great king? and why are the halls that con

The candles went out, but the Sangreal spread a brighter

the sacred vessel appeared in letters of flame, “Amfortas is
heavenly music filled the air, and invisible angels sang “Glor

The hero stood silent, his heart overflowing with joy and
step and dignified mien. He bore a crown in his hands, and t

“Hail, Percival, all hail! Long have we waited for your
called to make over to you the insignia of the highest ho
pilgrimage will soon be over, and I shall rest in the Lord.”

Amfortas, who was now well, and free from pain, rose fro
royal mantle on his shoulders, calling on him to uphold the r

The assembled knights joined in proclaiming the new king

And the angelic choir sang in jubilant tones:

“Hail to thee Percival, king of the Grail!
Seemingly lost for ever,
Now thou art blest for ever.
Hail to thee Percival, king of the Grail!”

While Percival stood there, touched and softened by all th
followed by her train. As he looked at her inquiringly, she t
wife he loved so well, and from whom he had so long been a

It was strange that the light shed by the holy Grail left
Moorish king, who seemed to be overshadowed by a dark c
hall, but did not fall upon him.

“The sacred vessel,” replied old Titurel, “that received the
live in the darkness of unbelief, in the bonds of the Evil C
Light and Truth, and your heart also shall be enlightened.”

The old man’s words had a strong effect upon Feirefiss, w
Titurel; and no sooner was the rite concluded than he too c
emanated from it.

After that, Titurel knelt down before the sacred vessel and
solemn leave of all, told them that Sigune was now at rest
more seen of them, or of any mortal man.

Feirefiss remained for some time at the castle on the holy
faith, and when he went away, he took as his wife the fair Q
son named John, who became a great warrior, and who forn
a brotherhood, strong, mighty, enduring, and of great renow



ELSE'S DREAM.

I
LOHE
(LOHER

THE SIL

U

himself, the knights of the Round Table sought in vain for
vision could not pierce the earthly mists that cloud Heaven
Mountain farther East, where it was guarded by Prester Joh
did the Templars appear with the silver dove on shield and
none knew whence they came or whither they went.

Meanwhile Percival and Konduiramur lived happily togetl
children with the greatest care. Kardeiss, the eldest son,
kingdom of Belripar, and over his patrimony of Waleis and
his parents, while the daughter, Aribadale, took the place of
hall and back again. It was long since any of the knights of t
out and fight against the unbelievers, for the Saracens had b
when the knights were all assembled round the king in th
distance, but coming ever nearer and nearer. It sounded
appeared on the sacred vessel in letters of flame, that Lohe

innocent, and that he should be borne whither he should go,

"Hail Lohengrin, chosen of the Lord!" cried the knights of

Percival rejoiced greatly, and embraced, and blessed Lohengrin's high calling, and also with anxiety about his sa had once worn, and the sword that had broken during Perci re-forged and tempered in the sanctuary of the Sangreal.

A squire now entered the hall, and announced that a bo golden crown was towing by a chain of gold. This was the si king and queen, and all the knights accompanied him to embark, Percival gave him a golden horn, and said:

"Blow three times on this horn as a sign that you have ar three times to show that you are coming home; for, if you a are sprung, you must at once be up and away on your retu brotherhood of the Sangreal."

Lohengrin sprang into the boat, and the swan swam awa softest strains of music; but whether it was the swan that s ceased when the boat reached the sea. Its place was taken When night came on, the young hero stretched himself in th waves.

FAIR-ELSE, T

One day the youthful Duchess of Brabant had gone out to called Fair-Else. On this occasion she had somehow got sepa at all sorry, for she wanted to have a little quiet time for th tree, and began to ponder over her troubles. She had many l the Count of Telramund, a mighty warrior and her former promised her to him on his death-bed. The young duchess b marry him in spite of his threats, and he now declared that charge against her before the newly-elected German King, heavy heart, till she fell asleep, lulled by the humming of overhead. And in her sleep she dreamt. It was a strange dr wood, and offering her a little silver bell, told her to ring delay. It seemed to her that she tried to take the bell but co

meaning of her dream, she became aware of a falcon hove
finally perched on her shoulder. Tied round its neck was a s
gently detached the bell and the falcon flew away.

Soon after she returned home, a messenger arrived to sur
the Rhine. She obeyed the summons with a heart at ease, fo
in the hope her dream held out to her.

King Heinrich was a man who both loved and exercised j
of wild Hungarians ravaged the south every year,—and Cou
great value to him, so he hoped that his claims would be suc



LOHENGRIN'S ARRIVAL.

The trial began. Three witnesses were brought to prove th position to marry a vassal was strictly forbidden by the law false and perjured; and the evidence of one witness was nc truth of his allegation against the duchess by challenging to defend her cause, and might God show the right.

The challenge could not be refused, but three days' time hall to see if any noble warrior would defend her, but all fea moved; a silence as of death reigned in the court. Then th bosom and rang it, and the clear sound that it gave forth louder echoes till it was lost in the distant mountains. After appear at the appointed time.

The three days were over. The king was seated on his ch the rushing waters of the Rhine that flowed close to wh surrounded him, and before him stood Count Telramund ir ever.

Three times the count called upon the champion who was eyes were fixed upon the king, anxious to hear whether he hesitated, distant music was heard coming over the Rhine. before. A few moments later a boat was seen approaching th neck, and in the boat a knight clad in rich armour was lying a golden horn three times. The notes echoed across the ri accepted the position of champion of innocence. He underst lists where his adversary was awaiting him.

Before the fight began, the herald came forward, and dem

"My name is Lohengrin," answered the knight, "and I am

"It is sufficient," replied the king; "your patent of nobility

The trumpets sounded to battle, and the combat began. Te first contented himself with standing on the defensive; but s one blow he cleft the count's helmet and head.

"God has decided," said the king, "and His judgments are expedition against the wild invaders, and command the cont

Lohengrin joyfully accepted the proposal, and at the same

service he had done her. She had recognised him from the
her heart was full of wonder and gratitude.

On the journey to Brabant, Lohengrin and Else saw a gre
liked. In the castle at Antwerp they were publicly betrothed,

When the bridal pair left the cathedral after the wedding
to the place from whence he came, or as to his parentage, f
for ever.

They were startled out of their honeymoon by the king
invaded the land, so King Heinrich had determined to co
duchess, like most of the other ladies, went with her husba
the princes of the empire, and the ladies used to talk of the
husband was mentioned, a strange silence would fall upon t
heathen magician, and that he had gained the victory over C

PAR

When Else heard the scandalous tale, she was deeply hurt
power of justifying him, and of making the scandal-mong
become of these thoughts that she forgot her husband's war
asked him whose son he was, and whence he came.

"Dear wife," he said, in quiet sorrow, "I will now tell you,
to have remained hidden for ever; but remember, the hour o

The hero led his trembling wife before the king and his n
them of his great father, Percival, and of his own coming to
the holy Grail.

"I would fain have fought the barbarians with you, noble
cheer—you will conquer the robbers, rule over the heathen,

The hero spoke with the enthusiasm of an inspired seer,
regarding the future of the empire. When he ceased, all pres
coming, but this time sad and slow as a dirge. It came nighe

"Farewell, beloved," said Lohengrin, clasping his weepin
world of yours, passing well; but now a higher will than min

He tore himself away with tears in his eyes, and entering
borne away from their sight.

She did not long survive the parting from her husband, ar
about to join her husband and see the holy Grail.

Whether she was right or wrong, none of those about her



TRISTRAM TEACHES ISOLDE TO PLAY THE GUITAR.

IV. TRISTRAM

Trusty Rual an

A furious battle was raging before the gates of the castle, fo
his feudal superior, whose oppression had grown too great t
praying fervently for her husband's safety, as she clasped in
of battle filled the air.

All day long it lasted. In the evening, Rual, the marshal, l
save what she could, and make ready for instant flight, for I
the castle. Queen Blancheflur heard what he said, and with
be done for her, hurried the other women in their preparatic
fly with his master's child to a place of safety.

But while they hastened to obey the marshal, it was alrea
remained. They carried the dead queen to another room, ar
were all faithful, and when Morgan took the castle soon aft
The victorious king, who honoured Rual for his fidelity to h
subdued, and then went back to his own place.

Time passed on, and the foster-parents were delighted wi
christened Tristram, or Tristan (Sorrowful), because of the
taught him all knightly exercises, and got him tutors
accomplishments.

One day some foreign merchants landed on the coast, and
to see them, and questioned them about their country, and
beauty and the great knowledge he possessed aroused their
foreign country where he would bring a good price. So on
anchor, and set sail. Rual pursued them, but they escaped, (
however, threatened to overwhelm them. A terrific storm
They thought it a sign of God's wrath, and were filled with
set the boy free, and they kept their word. They put him
uncommon gifts he would soon make a livelihood. They w
way, Tristram joined them, and accompanied them to the c
service as page, and grew very fond of him.

Meantime Rual had sought his foster-son everywhere, and
news of him. He wandered from one country to another, be
Mark's court. Tristram greeted him with joy, and took him t

When Mark heard who the supposed beggar was, he excla

"What! Are you the former marshal of the traitor Rivalin,

"Sire," replied Rual, "love made him do so. The Lady Bl
went away from here. She and her husband are both dea
"whom I have brought up from his infancy, and whom I hav

The king was astonished to hear this tale, and was pleas
Rual remained in Cornwall with his foster-son, for, his wife
Morgan's despotic sway.

Tristram grew up to be a tall and handsome man, a brave
war. But although he lived a full and joyous life, he could n
that his fellow-countrymen and rightful subjects groaned un
feelings on the subject to his uncle, who gave him men an
him promise to return to Cornwall afterwards, as he had app

The expedition was successful. Morgan was defeated a
remained for a year longer in his native land, settling all d
Having done this, he made Rual governor of the realm, and

ISOLDE (YSI

On his arrival there, he found every one in great distres
Cornwall, and, with the help of his brother-in-law Morolt,
and forced King Mark to pay him tribute; and a shameful tri
bound to send thirty handsome boys of noble birth to Irela
king. On the very day of Tristram's return, Mark was abo
Gurmun's messenger, who had come to receive them.

Tristram was very angry when he heard the news, and t
such an arrangement. Then going straight to Morolt, he tore
only answer was to draw his sword and challenge him to
time, Morolt, having severely wounded Tristram, cried:

"Yield, Sir Tristram: I feel pity for your youth. Yield, and
can heal a wound made by my poisoned blade."

"Death rather," exclaimed the young knight, and making
to jaw.

This settled the matter. The Irish returned home sadly, bea
back to his uncle's palace. His wound was washed and bour
use of balm, and other herbs of well-known excellence. An
that only the Irish queen Isolde, and her daughter of the sa
wound. So Tristram determined to go to Ireland in the gui
although he knew that Gurmun had sworn to kill him an

hands.

At length he reached the Irish court, and there he play
begged him to teach his art to her young daughter Isolde.
teaching her, and listening to her sweet voice as she sang so
his wound. And she, in learning from him, learnt to love hin

The days went on, and the pain of his wound grew worse
her to heal him. This she at once consented to do, and a fe
than before, and the king was so charmed with his music th
fearful of discovery, Tristram determined to be gone while y

On his return to Cornwall, he was joyfully received by a
make him his heir, and they did not wish to have a forei
Tristram, finding what was in their minds, himself advised
Ireland would be the most suitable person for him to wed.
to King Gurmun as his uncle's ambassador, to ask for the ha

Arrived in Ireland, he set out for the royal residence. On t
his daughter in marriage to whoever slew a dragon that wa
were of noble birth.

Tristram sought out the dragon, and, after a long strugg
proof that he had really slain it, he turned to go; but the p
sank backward into the morass out of which the dragon had

Struggle as he might, he could not free himself, for he ha
saw a horseman approach, cut off the head of the dead mons

The horseman was sewer (head waiter) at the palace. He
meed of victory. The queen, who knew the man well, and h
with her train to the dragon's hole, and discovered the real
showed that it was he who had done the deed. He was quit
to the palace. The princess at once recognised him to be th
birth was sufficiently good to enable him to win the prize.
quiet. Then taking her daughter into the next room, she sho
with which the creature was slain.

"Look," she said, "the minstrel is the real hero of this adve

She left the room, adding that the truth would soon be kn

bit of the blade was broken off.

"Merciful heaven," she cried, "surely he cannot be the—— had drawn out of the wound on her uncle's head. She fitt feared.

"Ha," she went on, trembling with anger, "he is the murd slain with his own weapon."

Seizing the sword in a firmer grip, she went into the roor head; but as she did so, he smiled as in a happy dream, and her uncle looking at her reproachfully, and she nerved her h mother, who had entered unnoticed.

"Wretched child," she cried, "what are you doing? Are you

Isolde told the queen that this was Tristram, her uncle's m

"I loved my brother dearly, but I cannot revenge him, for is worth more than a single man, however dear to our hearts

Isolde confessed that her mother was right, and let her res

When Tristram had recovered, he did not show the drag sewer to trial by combat. Now the man had often fought be lists, his heart died within him, and he confessed his guilt. K be broken, and sent him forth a banished man.

Tristram then fetched the dragon's tongue, and was at onc

Great was the astonishment of all, when Tristram, instead uncle King Mark, of Cornwall. Gurmun had such a dislike t point-blank, if Queen Isolde had not taken part in the debat a gracious answer from the king, and was content. No one t old king of Cornwall. She was a princess, and princesses w that they should marry some particular person.

The Lov

The princess went on board Tristram's vessel, which was also, and as soon as her old nurse and faithful companion closeted with the queen, who wished to say a few last words

"Look, Brangäne," said the mother, "take this goblet, and juices of certain plants, and is a love-potion. See that my da and all will yet be well."

The nurse promised to be careful, and took leave of the qu

Wind and weather were favourable to the voyagers. On princess for a long time, and trying his best to distract her t the unknown future, he became so thirsty that before begin One of the attendants opened a cupboard, and finding ther nurse had made it in case it were wanted, and took it to pledge him, as was the custom. The princess raised the cup it to her lips again, and drank half the contents. Then she re

Their eyes met, and they knew that they loved each other.

When Brangäne came in a few minutes later, and saw bemoaned what had occurred, saying that the queen had gi upon their wedding-day. But the princess comforted her by will, and could struggle against enchantment. And struggle t

The ship reached the harbour, and King Mark came down the appearance of the princess, whom he welcomed with al himself a happy man.

All went on quietly for some time, so carefully did the n people began to whisper, and at length the whisper reached what he heard, but afterwards the thing was proved to hin bring the lovers to trial. Meanwhile Brangäne had discover fled into the forest with him and Isolde. There they hid the and the nurse feared for her darling's life if she remained in

One day as they were talking over what were best to be stepped forward, and assured him that the stories that he Tristram and Isolde, willingly believed her, and took them h

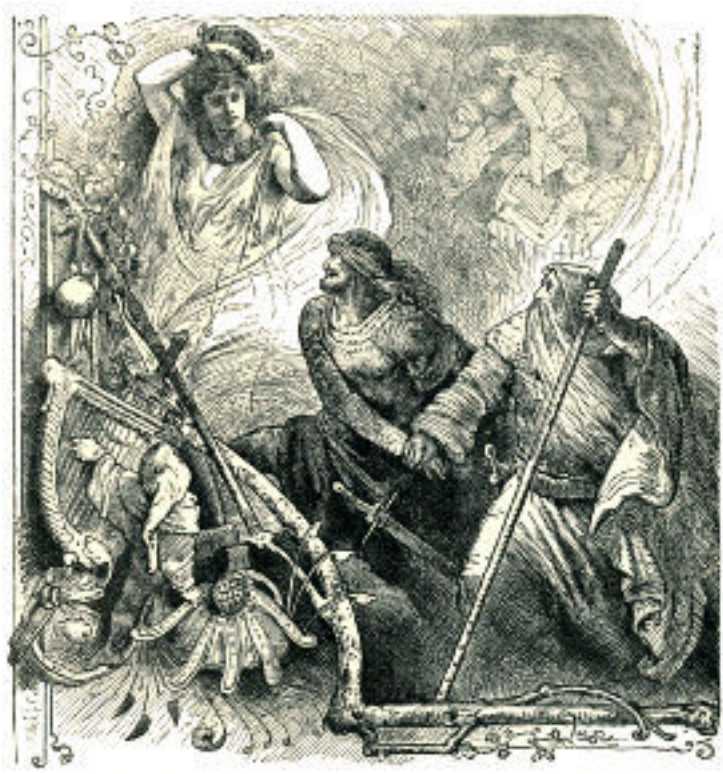
But the effect of the philter had not yet passed off, nor hac about the court, and Tristram could not call any of the wh name of knight, and had ill repaid his uncle's kindness. Iso they must part, and as they said farewell, it was with the fe the time they met again.

Tristram went away. He wandered through Normandy adventurous life, but he could not forget Isolde. At last he Jovelin and his son Kaedin hiding in a thatched cottage in a land. It was late in the evening when he arrived at the sol daughter of his host, curiously enough, was also named Isol It did him good to be with the maiden and her father. He own kingdom. There he found his presence much wanted, first action was to re-establish order and good government, to help King Jovelin. He fought the robbers there, chased th friends with Kaedin. Weeks passed, and he became engag married to another woman would cure him of his love for him.

His betrothal did not bring him peace. His affection for t marriage, and, unable to feign a love he did not feel, went again invaded the country. He conquered them, and forced day was fixed; but one evening he was induced to accompar combat to which this led, he received a spear thrust in the l of the fight, and took him home to the palace, where Isolde s

Every one hoped that he would soon recover from his wo the Queen of Cornwall had a remedy that would cure him, for Cornwall to appeal to her compassion. No sooner had the go to Arundel, and cure his nephew. Armed with his perm never rested till she arrived at King Jovelin's palace. There —he is dying." They led her to his couch, and she knelt do who she was; next moment he opened his eyes, gazed at her and kissed him, and in that kiss her spirit passed away. They the distant land of Arundel.





TANNHÄUSER BETWEEN ECKHARD AND VENUS.

LEGEND OF T

TANNHÄUSE

One evening when the noble knight Tannhäuser was sitting
made him a poor man instead of a prince, he was startled b
should be the bailiffs come to arrest him for debt; but inste
who ruled the rich Danubian land of Austria.

The duke chid the young man for his debts and follies, a
to court, where his music and society were much missed.

So Tannhäuser once more returned to court, and took par
a great battle waged against the enemies of the realm. He
song, and because of his bravery. So Friedrich gave him the
of money.

The Hohenstaufens, too, looked upon him favourably, bot
Germany after him. The minstrel received many gifts at thei

But although large sums were thus continually passing i
patron the Duke was killed in the battle of the Leitha. He m
memory of the man who had been so kind to him. But at
cheerful themes, so he collected what little remained of
wandered from castle to castle, and from town to town,
received. He travelled through Bavaria, and remained som
after that he crossed the Alps into Italy. At Pavia, he made t
the fascinating minne-singer, and he, in his turn, to the knig
for his daughter's hand, replied that he liked Tannhäuser ve
the wherewithal to support her. Minstrelsy was all very w

butter. “You have both your sword and your harp to trust to
set up house, and then I will give you Kunigunde.”

Tannhäuser took leave of his lady-love, promising to retu
keep his promise.

KLINGSOHR AND

He rode away sad at heart; but the weather was so beau
remain sad long. He sang wherever he could get an audienc
him no gold. He therefore tried what his sword could do for
rival Heinrich Raspe, the “pope’s king,” thereby helping to
assistance. Then he went back to Italy, and fought there als
Once, soon after this, he sought and found shelter for the
supper he delighted every one with his minstrelsy. But in
dressed in black garments embroidered with gold, and wear
seating himself, began to play and sing in a deep, powerful,
effect. The guests all glanced at each other in silence when it

Tannhäuser, throwing off the unaccountable feeling that
about woods and birds and flowers, and soon both he and th
that, they all began to play at dice. Tannhäuser won large
and not only these, but some of the money he had put aside

The next day, when he left the castle, the stranger went w
won all his money from him. Seeing how sad Tannhäuser loo

“Do not pull such a long face over so small a matter as t
Landgrave Hermann has summoned a minstrel tournament t
fails will lose his head. My name is Klingsohr, and I come f
Your songs are like the bliss of heaven; mine, like the horr
shall take the heads; if, on the other hand, we lose, we shall
shudder like a weakling to hear me talk thus, for you belie
instead of that, it is the realm of Dame Venus, who gives h
both silver and gold in abundance. If you do not care for the
to Wartburg, for she lives in the Hörselberg, which we shall

Tannhäuser listened to his companion with a shudder; bu
Hörselberg, and to tell of the marvellous charms of the que

eyes. So he set out with his strange companion, forgetting, o

When the travellers approached the mountains of Thurin with his sword at his side, and a white staff in his hand. A who they were, and from whence they came. The new-come

"People call me the faithful Eckhard, the Harlungs' com alas! wicked Ermenrich, and his evil counsellor Sibich, slew death."

"The Harlungs, Ermenrich, Sibich," repeated Tannhäuser t

"Three or four hundred years or even more may have pass time after the manner of men; but ever since those old days Venus Mount."

Klingsohr burst out laughing, and cried, "Spare your word Venus."

"Get thee behind me, tempter," said Eckhard; "I am going glory and wealth."

"And I am going on to prepare his lodging in our queer towards the mountains.

The minstrel and Eckhard continued their way quietly, ta with its meadows, trees, and rushing stream, and, a little fa sound as of waves beating a rock-bound coast, the roar and of wild beasts.

"That is the Hörselberg," said Eckhard, "the place where her dominion. Keep thine eyes and ears both shut, lest the te

DAME

The nearer the travellers came to the mountain, the mor resolved themselves into harmony. Through a door in the r seemed to be enjoying themselves to the utmost. At the en Tannhäuser, she smiled, and signed to him to approach. Eck to beware of the temptress, who was outwardly like an ange more, but Venus interrupted him by beginning to sing a wor

her kingdom; and Tannhäuser, as thoroughly enchanted as
aside, and hastened to the queen of beauty, who stretch
threshold, and he half staggered across. Then the door shut,

It would be impossible to describe all the wonders and de
day brought new pleasures, which he enjoyed to the utmost
that satiety was not happiness. He had a horror of hims
conscience, once awake, left him no peace. After an inwar
priest, tell him all, and entreat him to show him how he mig

Tannhäuser felt much happier when he had formed this r
go. At first she refused, and then consented, saying that he
away to seek. So he went out into the sweet fresh air, whic
few minutes. Then he went on his way with much forebodi
him?

He told his tale to priests, abbots, and bishops, but they o
Father at Rome was the only person on earth who had powe
the under-world.

He went to Rome, and confessed all his sin and sorrow to
the answer of his Holiness with a broken and a contrite hear

“You are an adherent of the cursed race of Hohenstaufen;
one with them: I tell you plainly that God can no more pard
saying, he thrust his gold-headed walking-stick into the grou

Tannhäuser then exclaimed in his misery, “What shall I do
against me, and men will have nought to do with me.”

At this moment an unknown voice broke in, “There is a
and He that came to redeem men from their sins, and who
and I will give you rest.’”

Tannhäuser started when he heard himself thus addressed

“Alas,” he answered, “it is too late; I cannot, dare not,
pleasures she offers me.”

So he went back to the Hörselberg in spite of Eckhard’s en

Now it came to pass, three days after, that the Pope again
thrust into the ground had taken root, and put forth leaves

remembered the words of the Saviour: “Be ye also merciful
messengers in search of Tannhäuser; but he could not be fou



IN]

Aachen, 396, 400, 407.
Adehart, son of Haymon, *v.* Children of Haymon.
Aelfrich (Alberich), 59.
Africa, 400, 401.
Aix-la-Chapelle, *v.* Aachen.
Alberich, Dwarf, 55, 59-81, 109, 236, 256.
Alboin, 19-27.
Aldarich, 21.
Alemannia, 472.
Alicon, 412.
Alischanz, 412.
Alise, Princess, 415, 417.
Allfather, 353, *v.* also Odin, Wodan.
Allthing (assembly), 359.
Alphart of Aquitaine, 203, 209, 216, 217-9.
Alps, 476.
Amelolt, 203, 206, 208, 216.
Amelungs, the, 82-135, 208, 214, 216, 222, 224, 277, 29
304.
Amfortas, King, 425, 426, 441, 447, 448, 449, 450, 454.
Ancona, 200.
Anjou, 454.
Antwerp, 460.
Anzius, Emperor, 82.
Apollo, 69.
Apulia, 58, 397.
Aquitaine, 213, 412.

Arabella, 410, 411.
Ardennes, Forest of, 392.
Aribadale, 454.
Arnold, 50-54.
Aron, 146.
Arthur, King, Legends of, 419-82; 427, 428, 430, 431, 43
446, 453.
Arundel, 472, 473.
Aspilian, 192.
Asprian, 49.
Attila, King, *v.* Etzel.
Auda, 398, 400, 401, 407.
Audoin, 20.
Austria, 475.
Avars, 20, 367.
Avignon, 411.
Awentrod, 192, 196.
Aya, 372, 373, 380, 381, 393, 394, 395.
Aymon, *v.* Haymon.

Babenberg, 475.
Babylon, 402.
Badhilda, 157.
Balduin, 404, 405, 406.
Baldur, 241, 273, 276, 304.
Balian, Castle, 307, 308, 312, 313, 314, 316, 318.
Baligan, King, 103, 104.
Baligant, Caliph, 402, 406.
Balikan, Emir, 410.
Balmung (Sword), 236, 267, 269, 283, 296, 297, 298, 29
Bari, 28, 49.
Basilistum, 50-54.
Bavaria, 280, 476.
Bayard (Horse), 370, 371, 373, 374, 376, 382, 383, 385,
395.
Beaurepart, Monastery of, 385.

Bechelaren, 189, 208, 212, 281, 291, 292, 293, 303, 304
also Rüdiger.
Belt, Magic, 176.
Belripar, 433, 434, 454.
Berchtung, Duke of Pola, 29-54, 83-92, 93, 112, 113, 11
208.
Bee-wolf, *v.* Beowulf.
Beowulf, 347-364.
Berillus, 419.
Bern (Verona), 123, 124, 158, 160, 163, 169, 172, 174, 1
195, 199, 201, 203, 204, 206, 207, 208, 216, 223.
Berserker, 313.
Bertha, 400.
Biterolf, 171, 172, 189.
Black Forest, 280.
Blancheflur, 463, 464, 465.
Blaive, 407.
Blödelin, 285, 286, 287.
Bogen, 88, 89, 91, 113.
Bolfriana, 198.
Böswilde, 157.
Brabant, 460.
Brangäne, 470, 471, 472.
Bravalla, Battle of, 357.
Breisach, 114, 201, 202.
Breisgau, 201.
Breka, 350, 351.
Brosing Treasure, 354.
Brunhild, 234, 235, 251, 253-73, 275, 304, 305, 306.
Brunstein, 122.
Bulgaria, 82.
Burgundians, 210, 212, 213, 256, 258, 269, 270, 272, 27
Burgundy, 186, 191, 209, 237, 238, 241, 257, 261, 266,
292, 305, 397.
—— Duchess of, 398.

Cap of Darkness, 176, 246.
Cappadocia, 419.
Carolingian Legends, 367-418.
Cassian, 331, 345.
Catalonia, 425.
Caucasus, 182.
Ceres (River), 400.
Clarissa, 380, 384, 385, 386, 391, 395, 425.
Châlons, Count of, 384, 385.
Charlemagne, 27, 367, 372, 376, 382, 383, 384, 386, 387, 393, 394, 395, 396, 398, 399, 402, 406, 407, 408, 409
Children of Haymon, 367-96.
Chriemhild, 237, 238-99, 300.
Cologne, 162, 396, 456, 461.
Conduiramur, *v.* Konduiramur.
Constantine, 30-54.
Constantinople, 27, 30, 49, 82, 87, 89, 90, 91, 111, 112.
Cornwall, 465, 466, 468, 470, 473.
Cumberland, 430.

Dankrat, 238, 252, 254, 285, 287, 288, 295.
Danube, 189, 277, 280.
Denmark, 315.
Diebolt, 400.
Dietelinde, 281, 304.
Dieter the Harlung, 201.
Dietherbernet, 226.
Dietleib of Styria, 169-78, 179, 189, 205, 207, 213.
Dietmar, 122, 201.
Dietmarsch, 315, 321.
Dietrich of Bern, 52, 135-226, 277, 281, 286, 288, 291, 2 296, 297, 300, 303, 304.
Dietwart, 125.
Dordo(g)ne, 401, 407.
Dortmund, 396.
Drachenfels, 198.

Drachenstein, 243-52.
Drusian, 98-101.
Durindart (Sword), 404, 405.
Duringen (Thuringia), 289.

Eadgils, 358, 359.
Eanmund, 358, 359.
Ecke, 162, 163, 164.
Eckehart, 114, 186, 189, 201, 202, 203, 206, 219, 223, 2
Ecke-sax (Sword), 164, 168.
Eckewart, 238, 272.
Edgar, 192.
Eigel, 157, 158.
Eigoland, King, 400, 401, 402, 409.
Ektheov, 349.
Elias (Ylyas), 56.
Eligas (Ylyas), 56.
Elizabeth, 419.
Else, *v.* Fair-Else.
Elsung of Bern, 123, 222.
Engel, King, 245, 247, 248, 251.
Erka (Herka), 193.
Ermenrich, Emperor, 169, 170, 197, 198, 199-208, 213,
Etzel, King, 172, 189, 190, 191-7, 208, 209-22, 274-306.
Etzelburg, 275, 277, 281, 286, 291, 300, 304.

Fair-Else, 455-61.
Falcon (Horse), 154, 220.
Falkalone, 384.
Feirefiss, 449, 450, 451, 452, 454.
Flammberg (Sword), 373, 376, 385.
France, 409, 411.
Franks, 209, 210, 405, 406, 408.
Frederick, Duke of Babenberg, 475, 476.
—— Prince, 200, 216.

Freya, 235, 270, 304, *v.* also Frigga.
Friedburg, 198.
Frigga, 25, *v.* also Freya.
Frimutel, 424, 425.
Friesland, 192, 315, 321, 357.
Fritele, 114, 201, 202.
Fritilaburg, 169, 198.
Frute, the Wise, 315, 316, 318, 328, 329.
Furious Host, 226.

Galicia, 400.
Gamuret, 449.
Ganelon, 375-384, 401-403, 404, 406, 407.
Garadie, Count of, 313.
Garadin, 313.
Garden, 10, 75, 76, 79, 80, 106, 107, 110, 113, 173, 206 223.
Garonne (River), 400.
Gascony, 400, 409.
Gaul, 419.
Gawain, 438, 439, 440, 442, 445, 446, 447, 453.
Gere, 238, 266.
Gerhart, Count, 397, 399.
Gerlind, Queen, 322, 331-346.
Gepidæ, 20, 25, 26, 27.
Gernot, 237, 238, 240, 272, 273, 274, 290, 298.
Gerwart, 110.
Gibich, 190.
Giselher, 238, 265, 272, 274, 275, 276, 281, 282, 290, 2 298, 303.
Godelinde, 303.
Gothland, 349.
Goths, the, 351, 352, 353, 354, 359, 363, 364.
Grail, Holy, 419, 421, 424, 425, 426, 430, 434-440, 447, 450, 452, 454, 455, 462.
—— Legends of, 419-482.

Gramoflans, 441, 447.
Greece, 82.
Greeks, the, 91.
Grendel, 347, 348, 349, 351, 352, 353, 354, 356, 357.
Gudrun, 320-346.
Guinevere, 447.
Gunther, 212, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 251, 252, 2
256, 257, 258, 259, 261, 264, 265, 266, 268, 269, 272
275, 283, 287, 288, 290, 292, 295, 296, 297, 298, 306
Gunther (nephew), 260.
Gurmun (King of Ireland), 466, 467, 468, 470.
Gurnemann, 432, 433, 438.
Gyburg, 411, 413, 416, 417.

Hache, 114, 223.
Hadubrand, 116.
Hagen of Troye, 209, 210, 212, 213, 234, 237, 239, 240,
252, 254, 256, 259, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271
274, 275, 276, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 286
289, 290, 291, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 300, 304
316, 318, 319, 320, 322.
Hama, 354.
Hardred, 358, 359, 361.
Harlungs, the, 114, 199, 201, 224, 479.
Hartmut, 322, 325, 327, 331, 332, 333, 338, 339, 340, 3
Haward, 289.
Hawk's Nose, 110.
Haymon's Children, 367-396.
Hegeling Legends, 307-364.
Henne the Grim, 189.
Heime, 152-157, 160, 169, 170, 171, 172, 197, 198, 202
223, 224.
Heine (Hama), 354.
Heinrich of Saxony, King, 456, 461.
Helche, 54, 210, 215, 275, 303.
Helfrich, 293, 295.

Helfrich of Tuscany, 146.
Heligoland, 157.
Hel, *v.* Helle.
Hella, *v.* Helle.
Helle, 243, 276.
Helmigis, 25.
Helmnot, 295.
Helmschrot, 208.
Henry of Narbonne, 408-418.
Herche, *v.* Herka.
Herbrand, 113, 186, 194.
Hergart, 345, 346.
Herka, 54.
Hermann, Landgrave, 478.
Herrat, 54, 215, 221, 224, 304.
Hertnit, 189, 192, 194.
Herwig of Zealand, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 331, 334, 3
345.
Herzelinde, 227, 425, 448.
Hettel the Hegeling, 315-330.
Hildburg, 82-89, 309.
Hildburg (grand-daughter), 327, 334, 337, 338, 339.
Hilde, 309, 312, 313, 314, 315, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321,
329, 345, 346.
Hildebrand, 114, 135-151, 160, 161, 163, 168, 173-178,
191, 203, 205, 206, 216, 219, 221, 222, 223, 294, 295
300, 303.
Hildegunde, 83, 209-213.
Hildeswid, 119, 122.
Hirschhalle, 348.
Höder, 273, 276.
Hohenstaufens, the, 476, 477.
Holy Land, 396.
—— Mountain, 453.
Horand, the Minstrel, 315, 318, 319, 328, 330, 340.
Horn, Golden (port of Constantinople), 31.

Hornboge, 160, 163, 168.
Hörselberg, 478, 479, 482.
Hörselthal, 479.
Hrodgar, 347, 348, 351, 352, 353, 355, 356.
Hronesnas (Hill), 364.
Hrunting (Sword), 354.
Hug of Dordone, 368, 371.
Hugdieterich, 82-114.
Hugelwarte, 90.
Hunford, 351, 353, 355.
Hungary, 367, 461, 478.
Hunolt, 238.
Hunland, 279-299.
Huns, the, 89, 172, 192, 194, 209, 210, 211, 212, 215, 2
275, 276, 288, 289, 291, 292, 293.
Hygd, Queen, 357, 358.
Hygelak, 349, 350, 355, 357.

Ilmenrik, 169, 170.
Ilsan the Monk, 162, 166-9, 185, 188, 189, 190.
Imbreke, 114, 201, 202.
Imelot, 50-54.
Ireland, 307, 316, 468.
Irmin, 276.
Irmschart, Countess, 409.
Irnfried, of Düringen, 289.
Irolt, the Swift, 315, 316, 318, 328, 330, 341.
Isenland, 233, 251, 252, 253, 255, 256, 258, 261, 262, 2
Isenstein, 253, 255.
Isolde, 463-74.
Isoud (Isolde), 466.
Isung, the Minstrel, 195, 196.
Italy, 412, 476, 477.
Itonie, 446, 447.
Iwanet, 431.
Iwo, Prince of Tarasconie, 379, 380, 384, 385, 386.

Janibas, 145, 147.
Jeraspunt, 147.
Jerusalem, 57, 396, 419.
Jeschute, Lady, 430.
Joisiane, 425.
Jovelin, 472, 473.
Jutland, 347, 349.

Kaedin, 472, 473.
Kardeiss, 454.
Kingram, 433.
Kingrimursel, 440.
Kiot, King, 425.
Klamide, 433, 434.
Klingsohr, 440, 442, 445, 446, 477-80.
Knife-Man, the, 102-6.
Konrad, King, 223, 476, 477.
Koran, 410.
Konduiramur, Queen, 433, 434, 454.
Kundrie (witch), 439.
Künemund, 21.
Künhild, 174, 181, 182, 183, 184.
Kunigunde, 476, 477, 478.
Kuperan (Giant), 245, 246, 247.

Ladmer, King, 125.
Lahelin, 430.
Langobards, 20.
Laurin, King, 173-184.
Lausitz, 226.
Leitha, Battle of the, 476.
Leo, Pope, 411, 412.
Leopoldsdorf, 476.
Leupold, 31-54.
Liebgart, 74, 76, 79-81, 106, 110, 111, 113, 114.

Lilienporte, Castle, 88, 91, 111, 112.
Lindolt, 208.
Lind-worms, 73-79, 106-111.
Lodwig, 223.
Logreis, Castle, 442.
Lohengrin, 453-62.
Loherangrin, 453.
Lombardy, 55, 56, 60, 71, 80, 82, 106, 110, 113, 201, 21
Longinus, 26.
Love-potion, 470.
Lüdegast, 241, 266.
Lüdeger, 241, 266.
Ludwig, King of Normandy, 322, 327, 329, 340, 374, 375
411, 412, 414, 415.

Machorell, 57, 66, 67, 69-73.
Mahomet, 69.
Malagis, 369, 370, 371, 382, 383, 385, 387, 388, 391, 39
Mantua, 207.
Mark, King of Cornwall, 465, 466, 468, 470, 471, 472, 47
Marpilia, 103, 104, 105.
Marsilio, King, 400, 402, 405, 406.
Martin, 110.
Matelane, Castle, 315, 320, 321, 325, 326.
Melias, King of Huns, 192, 193.
Mentigger, 162.
Meran, 91.
Mermaid, 158.
Merman, 95, 96.
Messina, 64.
Milan, 200, 205, 206, 207.
Milo, 400.
Mimer, 230.
Mimung *v.* (Sword), 158, 160, 161, 162, 194, 196, 197, 1
Minne, Princess, 126.
Monfaucon, 386, 387, 383, 388, 393.

Montalban (Fortress), 380, 381, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 395.
Montsalvatch, 425.
Moors, 409, 410, 412, 415.
Morgan, 463, 464, 465, 466.
Morolt, 466, 467, 469.
Morung of Nifland, 315, 329, 330, 345.
Münchenzell, 189.
Muntabure Castle, 56, 57, 68, 69, 70.

Nagelring (Sword), 198.
Nägling (Sword), 351.
Nanna, 273.
Nantes, 430.
Naples, 64.
Narbonne, 412.
Narses, 22.
Netherlands, 237, 259, 261, 263, 272, 275, 277.
Niars, 157.
Nibelung, King, 235.
Nibelungs, 229-306.
Niduder, 157.
Nifland, 315.
Nordian, 194.
Nordland, 315-321.
Normandy, 322, 472.
Norns, 205, 243, 272, 281.
Nudung, 281.
Nürnberg, 476.

Oda, Queen, 50, 54, 192.
Odilia, 124.
Odin, 347, *v.* also Allfather, Wodan.
Ogier, 401.
Ohtere, 358.
Old-Troja, 95, 101.
Olifant (Horn), 404.
Olivier, 388, 398, 399, 400, 401, 404, 405, 406.
Omlung, *v.* Amelung.
Orange, 412, 413, 416.
Osantrix, 192, 193, 194, 195, 214.
Oserich, 192.
Osid, 192.
Ostrogoths, 22.
Orgueilleuse, Duchess (witch), 441, 442, 446, 447.
Orilus, Lord, 429, 430, 438.
Orleans, 414.
Ortgis, 145.
Ortnit, 55-81, 102, 106, 192.
Ortlieb, 278, 279, 287.
Ortrun, Princess, 331, 342, 345.
Ortwin (Gaoler), 112.
Ortwin of Metz, 237, 238, 240, 242, 266, 321, 326, 327,

Padauwe, 216.
Padua, 216.
Pampeluna, 400, 401.
Parille, 419.
Paris, 367, 380, 381, 382, 383, 386, 394, 396, 407.
Parmenia, 466.
Pavia, 22, 476.
Percival, 425-52, 454, 455, 461.
Peredeus (Giant), 26-7.
Pierlepont, Castle, 372, 373, 374, 380, 381.

Pinabel, 407.
Pipin, 400.
Portugal, 309.
Prester John, 453.
Pyrenees, 372, 373.

Raging Host, *v.* Furious Host.
Rahen, *v.* Ravenna.
Rainier, 398.
Randolt, 200.
Randwer, 199, 201.
Raspe, Heinrich, 477.
Rauch-Else, 93-95.
Raven-fight, 216-221, 295.
Ravenna, 26, 207.
—— Battle of, 216-221, 295.
Regenbald, 200.
Reinaldi Church, 396.
Reinhold, 204.
Reinold, Son of Haymon, *v.* Children of Haymon.
Rennewart, 416, 417.
Repanse, 454.
Reussen, 56, 189, 192, 214, 319.
Rhine (River), 186, 189, 201, 202, 251, 265, 273, 279, 2
298, 396, 456, 459, 461.
Rhineland, 114, 162, 190.
Rhone (River), 398.
Ribestein, 199, 200, 201, 203, 206.
Richard, son of Haymon, *v.* Children of Haymon.
Richonde, 424.
Rimstein, 197.
Ring (Magic), 176.
Rinold of Milan, 219, 220.
Ritchart, 295.
Rivalin, 463, 464, 465.
Rodgeier, 116, 119-121.

Roland, 371, 372, 379, 382, 383, 386, 395, 396-407.
Romaburg, *v.* Rome.
Rome, 64, 125, 169, 200, 203, 206, 213, 224, 374, 400,
Ronceval, 403-407, 409.
Rosamund, 19-27.
Rose Garden, the Great, 185.
Rose Garden, the Little, 173-184.
Rosen (Sword), 74, 76.
Rothaires, 27.
Rother, King, 28-54.
Round Table, 430, 431, 438, 439, 442, 447, 453.
Rual, 463, 464, 465, 466, 473.
Rüdiger of Bechelaren, 189, 190, 191, 193, 208, 214, 29
303, 304.
Rumolt, 238.
Runes, 357.
Ruother, *v.* Rother.
Ruotwin, 146.
Ruotze, 71, 74, 75.
Rype (Knight), 387.

Sabene, 87-92, 112, 113.
Saforet, 379.
Salern, 115.
Sampsing, *v.* Samson.
Samson, King, 115-124, 222.
Sangreal, *v.* Grail, Holy.
Saracens, 409, 420, 453, 454.
Saragossa, 400, 402, 406.
Scotland, 322.
Schilbung, King, 235.
Seeburg, Queen, 162.
Seine (River), 382, 394, 395.
She-wolf of the Sea, 354.
Sibich, 200, 203, 204, 206, 207, 223, 479.
Sicily, 58, 64.

Sidrat, Princess, 57, 69-71, 79-81.
Siegfried, 229-273, 275, 276, 277, 279, 282, 283, 286, 2
299, 304, 305, 321, 326, 327, 341, 345, 349.
Siegmund, 229, 230, 257, 259, 261, 262, 270, 272.
Siegmund (Siegfried), 349.
Siegwart, 229.
Sigebrand, 208, 307, 312, 313.
Sigelinde, Queen, 229, 259, 260.
Sigeminne, 92-106.
Sigestab, 189, 203, 206, 295.
Sigfrît, 229.
Sigunne, 425, 429, 430, 437, 452.
Sigurðr, 229.
Sinai, 183.
Sindolt, 238.
Sintram (Dwarf), 181.
Skeming (Horse), 196.
Skiöll, 243, 347, 348.
Skiöldings, the, 348, 349, 351.
Soti, 169.
Spain, 191, 372, 406, 409.
Spoleto, Duke of, 205.
Stag, Golden, 96, 97.
St. Denys, 387, 404, 412.
Steiermark, 172.
St. James the Apostle, 400.
Studas, 153, 154, 203.
Sturmland, 315, 341, 346.
Styria, 172, 174, 189.
Suders, City of, 64.
Susat, 194, 208.
Swan-garments, 280.
Swanhild, 199, 201.
Swan-maidens, 280.
Swedes, 349, 359.
Swemmeling, 279, 303, 304, 305.

Swithiod (Sweden), 358.
Swords, *v.* Balmung, Durindart, Ecke-sax, Flammberg, Hr Mimung, Nagelring, Nägling, Rosen.
Syria, 57.

Tannhäuser, 475-482.
Tarasconia, 379.
Tchionatulander, 425, 429, 430.
Telramund, Count of, 455, 456, 459, 461.
Templars of the Holy Grail, 452.
Terramer, 416, 417.
Terreman, Emir, 410.
Theoderic, 20.
Thessalonians, 83, 85, 87.
Thiedrich, 406, 407.
Thuringia, 289, 478.
Thurisind, 20.
Tibalt, Emir, 410, 411.
Titurel, 419, 420, 421, 422, 424, 425, 426, 451, 452.
Titurisone, 419, 420.
Toads, Magic, and eggs, 71-73.
Tralenburg, 202.
Transylvania, 215.
"Trekanfil," 198.
Trevrezent, 425, 447, 448, 449.
Tring, 289.
Tristram, 463-474.
Tristan, *v.* Tristram.
Tronege, 209.
Turpin, Bishop, 379, 404, 405, 406.
Tuscany, 64, 200.
Tuscany, Margrave of, 80.
Tyre, 64, 65.
Tyrol, 174, 184.

Ulen, Battle of, 477.
Ute, Queen, 207, 216, 217, 223, 238, 239, 242, 243, 252
262, 272, 273, 275, 276, 279, 304, 305, 308, 313.

Valencia, 410, 411.
Valkyrs, 235, 262, 398.
Venus, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482.
Verona, *v.* Bern.
Vespasian, 419.
Vienna, Siege of, 396-401.
Vikings, 115.
Virginal, Queen, 146-151, 154, 183, 205.
Vivian, 412.
Vivianz, 412.
Volker of Alzeyen, 238, 265, 266, 283, 284, 285, 288, 28
294, 295.
Vosges, 170, 212.
Vulcanus, Mount, 369.

Wachilde, 220.
Walberan, 182, 183.
Walchtheov, 354.
Waldemar, King, 214.
Waleis, 454.
Walgund, 83, 84.
Wali, 276.
Walkyrs, *v.* Valkyrs.
Walter of Wasgenstein, 170, 209-213.
Walter, 404, 406.
Wartburg Castle, 478.
Wasengau (Vosges), 212.
Wate, 315, 317, 318, 319, 320, 328, 329, 341, 342, 345,
Waxmuth, 88, 89, 113.
Wayland the Smith, *v.* Wieland the Smith.
Welle, 71.

Weohstan, 359.
Westenmer, 125.
Westphalia, 396.
Wichart, son of Haymon, *v.* Children of Haymon.
Wichstan, 359, 362, 363.
Widolf (Giant), 192, 194, 195, 196.
Widolt, 50-54.
Wieland the Smith, 152-162, 197, 230, 356, 362.
Wildeber, 162, 168, 194, 195, 196.
Wilkin-men, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 319.
Wilkinus, King, 158, 191, 192.
William of Orange, 408-418.
Wisora, 163.
Wittich, 157-162, 163, 168, 170, 174, 175-178, 179, 189
196, 197, 198, 202, 204, 206, 218, 220, 275, 281.
Wodan, 25, 31, 226, 229, 304.
Wolfbrand, 295.
Wolfdieterich, 87, 88, 89-114.
Wolfhart, 174-176, 181, 189, 190, 205, 208, 294, 295.
Wolfings, 206, 216, 222, 229.
Wolfrat, 49.
Wolfwin, 295.
Wölpensand, 328, 345.
Wölsung, 349.
Wörbeling, 279.
Worms, 186, 190, 234, 237, 241, 251, 257, 261, 262, 26
299, 303, 304.
Wülfings, 114.

Ylyas, 56-81, 192.
Yseult (Isolde), 466.

Zacharias, 58, 64, 65.
Zealand, 192, 325, 326, 327, 329.

Butler & Tanner, The Selwood

Transc

Some presumed printer's errors have been corrected, in the Table of Contents and Index were corrected where er printed text (top) and corrected text (bottom):

Tristram and Isold
Tristram and Isolde (Table of Contents)

Herling
Herlind (p. 39)

gransdon
grandson (p. 60)

Harnboge
Hornboge (p. 160)

befal
befall (p. 197)

month
mouth (p. 370)

Aspilian
Asperian (Index)

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EPICS AND ROMANCES OF THE MIDDLE AGES ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial

redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set

forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under

the terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full

Project Gutenberg License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided

that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party

distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work

is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission

of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41 Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit

www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in

compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.